

《实用英语综合教程 3》 全析精解

郭正行 编著

西北工业大学出版社

【内容简介】 本书是根据教育部高职高专规划(非英语专业)《实用英语综合教程》第三版编写的同步辅导用书。本书对教材课文进行了精细分析和全面注释,给出所有课文译文;针对各单元内容详细列出重点语法知识点,进行专题汇总;细致归纳重点词汇、词组的用法,特别提供大量例句供举一反三,使其更符合学生课外辅导及自学的需要、更具实用价值。本书配有全部习题答案以及详解,适用于高职高专学生及英语自学者。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

《实用英语综合教程 1、2、3》全析精解/郭正行编著. —西安:西北工业大学出版社,2005.8
ISBN 7-5612-1938-5

. 实... . 郭... . 英语—高等学校:技术学校—教学参考资料 . H313

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2005)第 042671 号

出版发行:西北工业大学出版社

通信地址:西安市友谊西路 127 号 邮编:710072

电 话:029-88493844

网 址:www.nwpup.com

印 刷 者:陕西宝石兰印务有限责任公司

开 本:850 mm × 1 168mm 1/16

印 张:32 375

字 数:890 千字

版 次:2005 年 8 月第 1 版 2005 年 8 月第 1 次印刷

定 价:49.60 元(本册 18.00 元)

前 言

目前,众多高职高专的学生在学习英语时每每苦于在课堂之外缺乏帮助,许多学生不得不求助于教师参考书,但却不知道该书是供教师专用的,不能针对学生在学习、复习、掌握英语时遇到的困难提供切实、有效、实用的指导和帮助。为了解决这一问题,特编写本书。

本书是根据教育部高职高专规划教材(非英语专业用)《实用英语综合教程》第三版编写的同步配套辅导用书,旨在帮助学生更好地掌握该教材。本书的特点是立足于全面系统地讲解教材内容,并且在此基础上补充、巩固、提高英语基本知识和加强实用技能,使学生即便是在脱离教师和课堂的条件下,也能更加有效地掌握教材并提高英语实用能力。

本书包括:

一、课文解惑:对课文 A 和 B 中较为复杂的难句或长句加以分析与注释,并对其中的重点词语和语法现象,通过补充典型例句的形式加以讲解。

二、词汇精华:每个单元挑选数个英语常用词汇,介绍其多种不同的用法及与其他词汇的灵活搭配。

三、语法告诉你:根据每个单元的实际内容,将英语学习中必须掌握的语法项目,逐一安排在各个单元中加以诠释,并在复习原有知识的基础上加以扩展和总结。

四、练习答案:对全部练习提供答案,对侧重巩固某一句型或语法概念的练习配以必要的详解,不仅仅使学生知道每个练习的答案,而且还使他们深入了解答案背后所反映的语言知识;对听力练习则附以录音原文。

五、参考译文:对课文 A 和 B 以及会话实践中的所有文字部分配有译文以供参考和加深理解之用。

本书编写力求文字严谨,涵盖面广,但限于编者水平,难免有不当之处,欢迎广大读者指正。

编者

2005年3月

目 录

Unit 1 1

Text A 1

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 10

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 15

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 2 21

Text A 21

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 30

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 37

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 3 44

Text A 44

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 53

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 59

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 4 66

Text A 66

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 77

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 87

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 5 93

Text A 93

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 103

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 112

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 6 119

Text A 119

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 128

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 136

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 7 141

Text A 141

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 150

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 158

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案

Unit 8 164

Text A 164

① 课文解惑

② 词汇精华

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Text B 172

① 课文解惑

② 语法告诉你

③ 练习答案

④ 参考译文

Skills Development and Practice 180

① 阅读技巧 —— 答案

② 翻译实践 —— 答案

③ 写作指导 —— 答案

④ 听说 —— 译文、答案



UNIT

Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 ... and I got to know people by the flowers I had to remember not to cut down, by the things stuck in the ground on purpose or by the things lost in the grass .

【译文】而就是通过那些我得记清楚不能剪掉的花,通过那些人们故意插在地上的东西,或是通过那些遗失在草坪上的东西,我开始了解了形形色色的人。

【注释】 (1) get to (do) 的意思是“开始(知道,了解,感到)”。

【例句】 You 'll like him when once you *get to know* him . 等你了解他的时候,你就会喜欢他的。

I think you are *getting to understand* me better . 我认为你开始更了解我了。

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 cut down 的意思是“砍倒”。

【例句】 If you cut down all the trees you will ruin the land . 你如果把树都砍倒,你就把这块地毁了。

这个短语还有一个意思是“削减,减少”。

【例句】 Your article is too long — please *cut it down* to 1,000 words . 你的文章太长了,请你把它缩减到 1 000 字。

The doctor told him to *cut down* his consumption of fat . 医生让他少吃含脂肪食物。

【注释】 (3) 短语 on purpose 的意思是“故意,特意”。

【例句】 “ Did she break it accidentally ? ” “ No, *on purpose* . ” “ 她是偶然把它弄坏的吗 ? ” “ 不是,她是故意弄坏的。 ”

I have come out *on purpose* to meet you . 我特意出来迎接你。

2. 【原文】 Mr . Ballou fell into the last category and he always had a reason .
 【译文】 巴卢先生就是属于最后的那一种人,但他总是有理由。
 【注释】 短语动词 fall into 的意思是“可分为(某类、几部分)”。
 【例句】 The lecture series *falls* naturally *into* three parts . 系列讲座自然地分为三部分。
 This age falls into three subdivisions — the Age of Copper, the Age of Bronze and the Age of Iron . 这一时期又可细分为三个时代——铜器时代、青铜时代和铁器时代。
3. 【原文】 Still, except for the money, he was a nice enough old guy, ...
 【译文】 但是,只要是除了钱这回事,他倒是一个不错的老头,.....
 【注释】 在这个句子中的 enough 是副词,修饰 nice; enough 修饰形容词或其他副词时要放在其后面。
 【例句】 Is the river deep *enough* for swimming ? 在这条河里游泳水够深吗 ?
 I wish you 'd write clearly *enough* for us to read it . 但愿你写得清清楚楚便于我们阅读。
4. 【原文】 I figured him for a thin retirement check, maybe an injury that kept him from doing his own yardwork .
 【译文】 我认为他的退休金不多,可能以前受过伤,所以没有办法自己清理院子。
 【注释】 keep ... from (doing) 的意思是“阻止,使.....不能”。
 【例句】 The church bells *keep* me *from* sleeping . 教堂的铃声使我不能入睡。
 Can 't you *keep* him *from* forgetting ? 你不能让他别忘记吗 ?
5. 【原文】 Then one late afternoon in mid-July I was walking by his house, and he motioned me to come inside .
 【译文】 7月中旬的一天傍晚时分,我走过他的房子时,他示意我进屋。
 【注释】 motion (to) sb . to (do) 的意思是“以手势让某人(做某事)”。
 【例句】 He *motioned* (to) *me* to enter . 他以手势让我进去。
 The guide *motioned* (to) *them* to be silent . 导游以手势让他们安静。
6. 【原文】 I thought I 'd save him the trouble of thinking up a new excuse .
 【译文】 我想还是让我来替他解围吧,免得他还得再找出个借口。
 【注释】 短语动词 think up 的意思是“想出,虚构”。
 【例句】 It is very difficult to do this, but I 'll *think up* a plan . 这件事很难办,但是我会想出一个计划。
 Can 't you *think up* a better excuse than this ? 你能想出一个比这更好的借口吗 ?
7. 【原文】 It will clear up in a day or two .
 【译文】 问题在一两天之内就可以解决了。
 【注释】 短语动词 clear up 的意思是“澄清;解决”。
 【例句】 I 'd like to *clear up* two or three points . 我想澄清两三个问题。
 The book has *cleared up* many difficulties for me . 这本书解决了我的许多困难。

它还有一个意思是“ (天气)转晴,整理,收拾”。

【例句】 I hope it *clears up* this afternoon . 我希望今天下午转晴。

Please *clear up* (the mess in here) before you go . 请你(把这儿乱七八糟的东西)整理一下再走。

8 . 【原文】 In the meantime I thought perhaps you could choose one or two volumes for a down payment .

【译文】 在解决之前,我想你也许愿意在这儿挑上一两本书,就当它是预付款吧。

【注释】 短语 in the meantime 的意思是“ 与此同时,在此之前”。

【例句】 The next program starts in five minutes, *in the meantime*, here 's some music . 下一个节目 5 分钟之后开始,现在请听音乐。

You will be allowed to rest shortly; *in the meantime* you must keep working . 很快就会让你休息;在此之前你必须继续工作。

9 . 【原文】 It was like a library, except with no order to the arrangement .

【译文】 简直就像是图书馆,只是书都码放得很混乱,根本没有章法。

【注释】 介词 except 后面除了接名词以外,还可以接介词短语。

【例句】 He rarely went anywhere *except* to his office . 他除了到办公室以外,很少到任何其他地方去。

Perhaps Mr . Hunter cannot spare any time *except* on Sunday . 除了在星期日,大概亨特先生没有空余时间。

The room was never much used, *except* for occasional visitors . 除了接待偶然的来访者以外,这个房间很少使用。

I looked everywhere except in the bedroom . 我到处都看了,就是没看卧室。

10 . 【原文】 “ Take your time, ” Mr . Ballou encouraged .

【译文】 “ 慢慢挑, ”巴卢先生鼓励我。

【注释】 短语 take one 's time 的意思是“ 不着急,慢慢来”。

【例句】 *Take your time* — there 's no rush . 别慌,不着急。

You certainly *took your time* getting here ! 你可来了,真沉得住气 !

11 . 【原文】 The idea of seeking out a special title was new to me, but not without appeal . . .

【译文】 刻意地去搜寻某本书对我来说倒是个新鲜事儿,却也不失其吸引力……

【注释】 短语动词 seek out 的意思是“ 找出”。

【例句】 We *sought her out* to tell her of her success . 我们找到了她,并告诉她成功了。

She *sought out* and acquired all his early paintings . 她找到并获得了他早期所有的油画。

12 . 【原文】 . . .so I browsed through the piles of books and asked, “ You actually read all of these ? ”

【译文】 . . .我就大致浏览了一下那一堆堆的书,又问他:“ 所有这些书你真的都看过啦 ? ”

【注释】 短语动词 browse through 的意思是“ 浏览”。

【例句】 She *browsed through* daily newspapers while waiting for the phone call . 她一边等着电话, 一边浏览着当天的报纸。

I can spend hours just *browsing through* books in the library . 我在图书馆浏览书籍可以一呆就是几个小时。

13 .【原文】 “ This is just what I 've kept, the ones worth looking at a second time . ”

【译文】 “ 这只是我保留下来的, 因为这些书值得再看看。 ”

【注释】 形容词 worth 的意思是“ 价值(若干) ”, 它的后面常可接一个名词。

【例句】 That house is *worth* about \$ 70,000 . 这所房子价值 7 万美元。

The contract is not *worth* the paper it 's written on . 这份合同的价值还抵不上写它的那张纸呢。

它的另一个意思是“ 值得 ”, 后面接动名词的主动形式, 但是表示被动的意思。

【例句】 The book is *worth* reading . 这本书值得一读。

His suggestion is *worth* considering . 他的建议值得考虑。

14 .【原文】 . . . and I was plunged into the aching tragedy of the Holocaust, into the extraordinary clash of good, represented by one decent man, and evil .

【译文】 我深深地陷入了痛苦的悲剧之中, 那场大屠杀, 那个受人尊敬的人物所展示的善与恶的冲突。

【注释】 plunge into 的意思是“ 使陷入 ”。

【例句】 That news *plunged* them *into* despair . 那消息使他们陷入了绝望。

The country was *plunged into* civil war after the death of the President . 总统去世后那个国家陷入了内战。

15 .【原文】 When the evening light finally failed, I moved inside and read all through the night .

【译文】 当傍晚最后一缕霞光消失时, 我回到屋里, 彻夜不眠地读着这本书。

【注释】 动词 fail 在这里的意思是“ 衰退 ”。

【例句】 His eyesight is *falling* . 他的视力在逐渐衰退。

He has suffered from *falling* health for the last two years . 近两年来, 他的健康每况愈下。

16 .【原文】 To make two long stories short, Mr . Ballou never paid me a dime for cutting his grass that year or the next, but, eventually, I would teach anthropology at Dartmouth College .

【译文】 长话短说吧, 在那一年或者接下来的一年里, 我为巴卢先生除草, 他从没付过我一分钱, 但是, 最终我却能够在达特默思学院教授人类学课程了。

【注释】 短语 to make a long story short 的意思是“ 长话短说 ”。

【例句】 *To make a long story short*, they began to study the problem in earnest . 长话短说, 他们开始认真地研究那个问题。

词汇精华

prefer *vt.*1. 宁愿,更喜欢 【例句】 There 's coffee or tea . Which do you *prefer* ?

【译文】 有咖啡和茶,你想要哪一种?

【例句】 She *prefers* to be alone .

【译文】 她喜欢独处。

2. prefer (to do) rather than (do) 宁愿.....而不愿

【例句】 I *prefer* to walk there *rather than* go by bus .

【译文】 我宁愿步行到那里去而不愿乘公共汽车。

【例句】 He *preferred* to stay at home rather than go with us .

【译文】 他宁愿呆在家里而不愿和我们一起去。

3. prefer (sth / doing) to (sth / doing) 喜欢.....而不喜欢

【例句】 I *prefer* walking *to* cycling .

【译文】 我喜欢步行胜过骑自行车。

【例句】 He *prefers* red *to* blue .

【译文】 他喜欢红色而不喜欢蓝色。

preference *n.* 偏爱;更喜欢的东西tip *vt.*

1. (使)倾斜;(使)翻倒

【例句】 Don 't lean on the table, or it 'll *tip* up .

【译文】 别靠着桌子,否则它会翻倒。

【例句】 Careful ! You 'll *tip* the boat over .

【译文】 当心!你会把船弄翻的。

2. 倾倒

【例句】 No rubbish to be *tipped* here .

【译文】 此处不准倾倒垃圾。

【例句】 The train stopped abruptly, nearly *tipping* me out of my bunk .

【译文】 火车急刹车,几乎使我从卧铺上翻落下来。

tip *n.* 垃圾,弃置物ignore *vt.*1. 不顾,忽视 【例句】 Jack completely *ignored* all these facts as though they never existed .

【译文】 杰克完全忽视了所有这些事实,就仿佛它们不存在似的。

【例句】 It is not a question that can be *ignored* .

【译文】 这不是一个可以忽略的问题。

2. 不理睬,不理睬 【例句】 It is dangerous to *ignore* traffic rules .

【译文】 无视交通规则是危险的。

【例句】 I said hello to her, but she *ignored* me completely !

【译文】 我向她打招呼问好,可她却根本不理我!

ignorance *n.* 无知ignorant *a.* 无知的

conscious *a.*

1. 自觉的, 有意识的

【例句】 Man is a *conscious* being .

【译文】 人是有意识的生物。

【例句】 One 's *conscious* motives are often different one 's subconscious ones .

【译文】 一个人有意识的动机往往不同于他潜意识的动机。

2. 知道, 意识到(后面接介词 of 或从句)

【例句】 He was very *conscious* of his shortcomings .

【译文】 他十分清楚自己的缺点。

【例句】 I suddenly became *conscious* that someone was looking at me .

【译文】 我忽然意识到有人在看着我。

3. 有知觉的, 神志清醒的

【例句】 Is the patient *conscious* yet ?

【译文】 病人有知觉了吗 ?

【例句】 She spoke to us in her *conscious* moments .

【译文】 她在清醒时和我们说了话。

4. 有觉悟的

【例句】 They are highly *conscious* politically .

【译文】 他们具有高度的政治觉悟。

consciousness *n.* 知觉; 觉悟

represent *vt.*

1. 代表

【例句】 The foreign minister *represented* the country at the conference .

【译文】 外交部长在该会议上代表着国家。

【例句】 The headmaster could not go to the meeting , so Mr . Smith *represented* him .

【译文】 校长不能出席会议, 所以由史密斯先生代表他。

2. 表示; 象征

【例句】 This quartet *represents* a major new trend in modern music .

【译文】 这个四重奏代表现代音乐的一种主要新趋势。

【例句】 The rose *represents* England .

【译文】 玫瑰花是英国的象征。

3. 表现

【例句】 The picture *represents* a hunting scene .

【译文】 这是一幅狩猎图。

【例句】 The king is *represented* as a villain in the play .

【译文】 在这个剧里国王被描绘成一个恶棍。

representation *n.* 代表; 表示; 陈述

representative *n.* 代表

translate *v.*

1. 翻译(into)

【例句】 He doesn 't understand Greek , so I offer to *translate* .

【译文】 他不懂希腊文, 所以我主动给他翻译。

【例句】 This book has been *translated into* many languages .

【译文】 这本书已经翻译成许多种语言。

2. 理解(as)

【例句】 I *translated* her silence *as* assent .

【译文】 我把她的沉默看作是赞同的表示。

3. 化为, 变为 (into)

【例句】 It's time to *translate* our ideas *into* action .

【译文】 是把我们的想法化为行动的时候了。

【例句】 This school offers the possibility of *translating* the latest educational principles .

【译文】 这所学校提供了把最新教育原理变为实践的可能性。

translation *n.* 翻译; 译文

assume *vt.*

1. 假定, 设想

【例句】 We cannot *assume* anything in this case .

【译文】 在这种情况下, 我们不能做出任何设想。

【例句】 Scientists *assume* that there is no animal life on Mars .

【译文】 科学家揣想, 火星上没有生物。

2. 假装, 佯装

【例句】 The look of ignorance she *assumed* had us all fooled .

【译文】 她装出那种无辜的样子愚弄了大家。

【例句】 He *assumed* a look of surprise .

【译文】 他装出惊讶的样子。

3. 承担; 呈现

【例句】 He *assumes* his new responsibilities next month .

【译文】 下月起他就任新职。

【例句】 The problem is beginning to *assume* massive proportions .

【译文】 这个问题变得越发扩大了。

assumption *n.* 假定, 设想

练习答案

Exercise 1

1. (open)

2. (open)

Exercise 2

1. He got to know people by the flowers he had to remember not to cut down, by the things stuck in the ground on purpose or by the things lost in the grass. He also learned something about his neighbors by their preferred method of payment: by the job, the month — or not at all.

2. Mr. Ballou was a nice old man, who lived a poor life.

3. Mr. Ballou was unable to pay the money because the bank made a mistake in his account. I believe this excuse, because Mr. Ballou was a nice old man, and it is not likely that he told a lie.

4. The author used to read what he could get from the paperback rack at the drug-store or what he found at home-magazines, the backs of cereal boxes, comics.

5. Mr. Ballou recommended to the author two books, which were quite different from what he used to read.

6. The author enjoyed reading much that everything around him seemed to disappear. He was plunged into the aching tragedy described in the book. When the evening failed, he moved inside and read all through the night.

7 . 35 years later ,he still vividly remembered the experience ,because he was astonished by such a great power a novel could contain .

8 . The author finally got books for the payment . It was greater than money because it changed the course of his life .

Exercise 3

1 . F 2 . F 3 . T 4 . T 5 . T

Exercise 4

I was 14 that summer and got to know Mr . Ballou when I earned money by mowing lawns for him . Mr . Ballou was an old nice guy . Having retired from his job ,he was living a simple and hard life and was unable to give me the payment in time .

One late afternoon in Mid-July ,I was motioned to enter his cool and shaded house . He said that he still couldn 't give me the payment because the bank had made a mistake in his account . Then he asked me to choose some of his books for a down payment . The idea of consciously seeking out a special title was new to me since I hadn 't read much before and didn 't know exactly how to select a book . Finally he searched through a stack and handed me a fairly thick book entitled *The Last Just* . The book was so overwhelming that I could hardly give it up . So the next week when I finished the reading ,Mr . Ballou presented me with another one on the study of anthropology .

It was just those books he lent me 35 years ago that not only kept me totally absorbed in the reading that summer , but also made me what I am now — teaching anthropology at Dartmouth College . A book , as I discovered ,if it comes at the right time ,may change the course of all that follows . It is the payment that is really greater than money .

Exercise 5

1 . 1) 2) owe sthg . to sthg . 3) 4)
 2 . 1) 2) 3) 4)
 3 . 1) *n* . 2) *v* . 3) *n* . 4) *v* .

Exercise 6

(1) evaluate (2) terms (3) estimating (4) earth
 (5) lawns (6) retired (7) afford (8) instead
 (9) owed (10) lent (11) appeal (12) stimulated
 (13) borrowed (14) absorbed (15) Eventually (16) social
 (17) arrangement (18) human (19) convinced (20) results

Exercise 7

1 . a . pays b . payment
 2 . a . injury b . injured
 3 . a . ignorant b . ignore
 4 . a . represents b . representative

Exercise 8

1 . is cleared up 2 . In the meantime 3 . fall into 4 . take one 's time
 5 . has adjusted to 6 . seek out 7 . plunged into 8 . think up

- 9 . as though 10 . on purpose

Exercise 9

- 1 . It is the first time I 've ever spoken to him .
- 2 . He was worried because it was the first time she had ever been late .
- 3 . It is the first time you 've ever made a complaint about it .
- 4 . We were surprised, because it was the first time they had ever invited us to lunch .
- 5 . The boy was delighted because it was the first time he had ever read anything like this .
- 6 . The boy doesn 't look very confident or comfortable, because it is the first time he has ever ridden a horse .

Exercise 10

- 1 . We 'll end the meeting here, provided (that) there are no further questions .
- 2 . You can stay up late unless you feel tired .
- 3 . We 'll be late if the train doesn 't arrive on time .
- 4 . We won 't let him in unless he tells us who he is .
- 5 . I 'd like to ask you some questions, unless you 're busy .
- 6 . We should have a good time, if we get good weather .
- 7 . As long as you don 't object, we 'll interview the next candidate now .
- 8 . He will lend you money provided (that) you promise in writing to pay him back .

参 考 译 文

胜于金钱的回报

1 . 在我 14 岁的时候,夏天靠给别人修剪草坪挣了点钱,而就是通过那些我得记清楚不能剪掉的花,通过那些人们故意插在地上的东西,或是通过那些遗失在草坪上的东西,我开始了解了形形色色的人。我还通过人们喜欢的付款方式——有的是按工付酬,有的按月付酬,还有的人根本不付任何薪酬——了解了住在肯塔基州路易斯维尔沃的那些邻居们。

2 . 巴卢先生就是属于最后的那一种人,但他总是有理由。有一次是他身上没有小于 50 元的票子;另一次是他没有支票了;还有一次我去敲门时他就没在家。但是,只要是除了钱这回事,他倒是一个不错的老头,从很远处看到我,都要晃晃帽子或者是手扶帽沿跟我打个招呼。我认为他的退休金不多,可能以前受过伤,所以没有办法自己清理院子。我总是不断地累加总账,但也不太计较到底这笔钱能有多少。只是除除草罢了,巴卢先生的草坪也就那么一点点,用不了多少时间的。

3 . 7 月中旬的一天傍晚时分,我走过他的房子时,他示意我进屋。那间厅里既阴凉又阴暗,我的双眼过了一会儿才适应了这样昏暗的光线。

4 . “我是欠了你的钱,巴卢先生开了个头:“但是……”

5 . 我想还是让我来替他解围吧,免得他还得再找出个借口。“没关系,你不用太放在心上。”

6 . “银行在我的账户上出了点错,”他还是接着说,并没有在意我的话:“问题在一两天之内就可以解决了。在解决之前,我想你也许愿意在这儿挑上一两本书,就当它是预付款吧。”

7 . 他的手指向四面的墙壁,我看到那里到处都堆满了书籍,简直就像是图书馆,只是书都摆放得很混乱,根本没有章法。

8. “慢慢挑，”巴卢先生鼓励我：“是看，是借，或者拿走都行。找些你喜欢的，平时你看什么书？”

9. “我也不知道。”其实我真不清楚。我通常就看一些在杂货店的架子上摆着的平装书，或者家里随处可以找到的杂志啦，麦片盒背面的图片啦，连环画什么的。刻意地去搜寻某本书对我来说倒是个新鲜事儿，却也不失其吸引力——我就大致浏览了一下那一堆堆的书，又问他：“所有这些书你真的都看过啦？”

10. 巴卢先生点了点头。“这只是我保留下来的，因为这些书值得再看看。”

11. “那你替我挑一本吧。”

12. 他挑起眉毛，偏着头，就像在为我选套装一样地打量着我。片刻过后，他在一堆书里找了找，递给我一本，封面是深红色的，还挺厚。

13. “《最后的公正》，”我读了出来：“作者是安德烈·施瓦茨巴特。书里写的什么呀？”

14. “内容下个星期由你来告诉我吧。”他说道。

15. 晚饭后我就坐在门外的一把不太舒服的餐椅里，开始看书了。看了几页以后，这庭院、这夏日就都消失了，我深深地陷入了痛苦的悲剧之中，那场大屠杀，那个受人尊敬的人物所展示的善与恶的冲突。书中的语言优美、简洁却震撼人心。当傍晚最后一缕霞光消失时，我回到屋里，彻夜不眠地读着这本书。

16. 到今天 35 年过去了，当时的情景还历历在目。一本小说所能包含的如此巨大的震撼力使我震惊了。由于语汇的贫乏却使我无法尽述我的感觉，所以当第二周巴卢先生问我：“怎么样？”我的回答只是：“这本书挺好。”

17. “那你就留着吧，”他说：“要不要我再推荐一本？”

18. 我点点头，他推荐的是玛格丽特·米德的一本人类学的经典之作《萨摩亚时代的到来》。

19. 长话短说吧，在那一年或者接下来的一年里，我为巴卢先生除草，他从没付过我一分钱，但是，最终我却能够在达特默思学院教授人类学课程了。而且就是在那个夏天我才明白，阅读绝不是我以前所认为的那样只是单纯的消遣，也不是躺在吊床上逃避一切的消遣（虽然我也曾经很多次这样享受）。我发现，如果在一个恰当的时间，发生在一个合适的人身上，那么一本书就可以改写这个人以后的岁月。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 I'm sitting at my mother's desk, a mahogany secretary with a writing leaf that folds down to reveal rows of cubbyholes and tiny drawers — even a sliding secret compartment.

【译文】 我现在正坐在母亲的书桌前，这是一张红木质地的写字台，它带有一个写字用的活动桌板，桌板折叠后就可以看到格架和几个小抽屉——甚至还有一个滑动的秘密夹层。

【注释】 动词 fold 的意思是“折，叠”。

【例句】 He *folded* the letter and putting it in his pocket. 他把信折起来放进口袋。

The table linen was neatly *folded* up and put away. 桌布已经整齐地叠起来收好。
它的另一个意思是“可以折叠”。

【例句】 The bed *folds* away into the wall. 这张床可以折叠起来放进凹壁。

Does the table *fold*? 这张桌子可以折叠吗？

2. 【原文】 I sensed Mother communicating with this gift, a communication I'd craved for 50 years.

【译文】 我意识到母亲是用这件礼物在和我交流，这也是我期待了 50 年的一种交流。

- 【注释】 动词 *sense* 的意思是“ 意识到, 感觉到 ”。
- 【例句】 *We sensed the tension in the conference room . 我们感觉到会议室里的紧张气氛。*
Although she didn 't say anything, I sensed that she didn 't like the idea . 虽然她什么也没说 , 但我意识到她不喜欢这个主意。
- 3 . 【原文】 *My mother was brought up in the Victorian belief that emotions were private .*
 【译文】 我的母亲是被一种维多利亚式的信仰教养成长的, 这种信仰认为感情是极其隐私的。
 【注释】 短语 *in the belief that . . .* 的意思是“ 相信 ”。
 【例句】 *He came to me in the belief that I could help him . 他到我这儿来, 相信我能帮助他。*
The buried themselves in their studies in the belief that they could serve their country with their knowledge . 他们埋头研究, 相信可以用自己的知识报效祖国。
- 4 . 【原文】 *But as a teen-ager I yearned for heart-to-heart talks between mother and daughter .*
 【译文】 但是我只是个十几岁的孩子, 我渴望一种母亲和女儿之间的心与心的沟通。
 【注释】 动词 *yearn* 的意思是“ 渴望, 向往 ”, 后接介词 *for* 或不定式。
 【例句】 *He yearned for his home and family . 他非常想念故乡和家人。*
She yearned to return to her native country . 她渴望回到自己的祖国。
- 5 . 【原文】 *She was willing to accept the relationship on these terms .*
 【译文】 她完全情愿接受用这样的表面的东西建立起的关系。
 【注释】 在这里复数名词 *terms* 的意思是“ 条件 ”。
 【例句】 *Do it on your own terms . 按照你们自己的条件去做吧。*
Tell them they must surrender on our terms — there will be no negotiation . 告诉他们, 他们必须按照我们的条件投降——没有谈判的余地。
- 6 . 【原文】 *At last I set my feelings down on paper .*
 【译文】 最终我把这情感借纸笔宣泄出来。
 【注释】 短语动词 *set down* 的意思是“ 写下, 记下 ”。
 【例句】 *Why don 't you set your ideas down on paper ? 为什么不把你的想法写在纸上呢 ?*
The lawyer asked him to set down the facts just as he remembered them . 律师要他把事实就按照他所记忆的那样写下来。
- 7 . 【原文】 *Forgive me, I wrote, for having been critical .*
 【译文】 我也写道, 请原谅我曾是那么的挑剔。
 【注释】 动词 *forgive* 的意思是“ 原谅, 饶恕 ”。
 【例句】 *She forgave him his thoughtless remark . 她原谅了他那欠考虑的话。*
I cannot forgive myself for not seeing my mother before she died . 我不能原谅自己, 母亲去世前我都没有见她最后一面。
- 8 . 【原文】 *I only knew that having written it, I could stop trying to make her into someone she was not .*
 【译文】 而我惟一确知的就是我的确写了这么一封信, 我可以不再试图去使她变成某个不是她那个类型的人。
 【注释】 *make . . . into (sb / sth .)* 的意思是“ 使成为, 使变成 ”。
 【例句】 *Working in the kitchen made the boy into a good cook . 在厨房工作使这个男孩成为一*

个好厨师。

Many of the cinemas have been *made into* bowling alleys . 许多电影院已经改成保龄球馆。

9 . 【原文】 Then it stayed on our attic for nearly a year while we converted a bedroom into a study .

【译文】 后来又在我们的阁楼上呆了将近一年时间,直到我把一间卧室改作书房它才找到了一个位置。

【注释】 动词 *convert* 的意思是“把……改变为”。

【例句】 These machines *convert* cotton into cloth . 这些机器把棉花变成布。

The plant *converts* crude oil into gasoline . 那座工厂把原油提炼为汽油。

语法告诉你

条件状语从句

1 . *if* 是最常用的引起条件状语从句的连词。用 *if* 引起真实条件从句时,表示如果条件实现,则主句的内容便成为事实。例如:

If anyone calls tell them I 'm not at home . 如果有人来访,就说我不在家。

If it rains, I 'll go for a walk . 如果下雨,我就坐车去。

If he has finished his work by six o 'clock we shall be able to take him with us . 如果他能在六点钟以前把作业做完,我们就能带他一起去。

If he arrived only yesterday, he 'll probably not leave before Sunday . 如果他昨天才到,星期日以前他可能不会离开。

从上面的例句中可以看到,从句中的动词可以用现在时态或过去时态,但是不用将来时态;而主句中的动词则用将来时态。主句中的动词如果用一般现在时,则从句不表示“可能”,而表示事实或习惯的动作,*if* 的意思是“无论何时,每逢”,等于 *whenever*, 例如:

If metal gets hot it expands . 金属变热时会膨胀。

If it rains, I go by car . 每逢下雨我就乘车去。

用 *if* 引起非真实条件从句时,则表示与事实相反的主观设想或者实现可能性很小的事态,例如:

If he were here I could explain to him myself . 要是他在这里,我就可以亲自对他解释了。

They would have been here by now *if* they had caught the early train . 要是他们赶上了早班火车,他们现在就已经到这里了。

关于这种用法详见第一册第八单元的“语法告诉你”。

2 . *unless* 表示相反的条件,意思是“除非……(否则就不),如果不”,等于 *if not*, 多用于否定句,例如:

Don 't come *unless* I telephone . 我不打电话你别来。

We cannot exercise our influence *unless* we have an organ . 除非我们有一个工作机关,否则我们无法施加影响。

这个连词还可以表示“除非(有下述情况)”,例如:

The directors have a meeting every Friday, *unless* there is nothing to discuss . 董事们每星期五开会,除非没有问题要讨论。

Come next week *unless* you hear to the contrary . 你下星期来吧,除非你听到相反的通知。

3 . *in case* 的意思是“ 如果,万一 ”,例如:

In case he arrives before I get back, please ask him to wait . 万一他在我回来之前到达,就请他等一下。

In case I forget, please remind me about it . 万一我忘了,请你提醒我。

4 . *as/ so long as* 的意思是“ 只要……(就……) ”,例如:

As long as we don 't lose heart, we 'll find a way to overcome the difficulty . 只要我们不灰心,就能找到克服困难的办法。

You can go out *as long as* you promise to be back before 11 o 'clock . 只要你答应在 11 点以前回来,你就可以出去。

5 . *on condition(that)*和 *provided/ providing (that)* 的意思是“ 以……为条件,假若 ”,例如:

We 'll let you use the room *on condition that (provided that)* you keep it clean and tidy . 我们可以让你们用这个房间,条件是保持整洁。

I will agree to go *provided/ providing (that)* my expenses are paid . 如果有人支付我的费用我就同意去。

Provided we get good weather it will be a successful holiday . 如果我们遇到好天气,假日会很成功。

6 . *suppose/ supposing* 多用于疑问句,意思是“ 设想,如果 ”,例如:

Suppose/ Supposing we can 't get the necessary equipment, what shall we do ? 假设我们弄不到必要的设备,我们怎么办 ?

Suppose/ Supposing it rains, can we play the match indoors ? 如果下雨,我们可以在室内比赛吗 ?

有时还可以把问句部分省略,例如:

Supposing the plane is late ? 假如飞机晚点怎么办呢 ?

But *supposing* one remained unconvinced ? 但是假如有一人仍然没被说服怎么办呢 ?

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . (open)

2 . (open)

Exercise 2

1 . C 2 . B 3 . B 4 . C 5 . D

Exercise 3

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 . disappointment | 2 . reserved | 3 . eagerness | 4 . announcement |
| 5 . forgive | 6 . critical | 7 . sliding | 8 . cheerful |
| 9 . polished | 10 . converted | | |

Exercise 4

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 . were filled with | 2 . be converted into | 3 . set down |
| 4 . was brought up | 5 . on the surface | 6 . fold down |
| 7 . on their terms | 8 . turned to | |

Exercise 5

- I'll tell Ann what happened if you really want me to but I'd rather you told her.
- You could invite Tom to the party but I'd rather you didn't.
- I'll do the washing-up if you really want me to but I'd rather you did it.
- I'll go to the bank if you really want me to but I'd rather you went.
- A: Do you mind if I go home early?
B: Well, there's a lot of work to be done. I'd rather you stayed until 5 o'clock.
- A: Is he getting better?
B: I'm not sure. In any case, I'd rather you didn't mention his health when you see him.

参 考 译 文

母亲的书桌

1. 我现在正坐在母亲的书桌前,这是一张红木质地的写字台,它带有一个写字用的活动桌板,桌板折叠后就可以看到格架和几个小抽屉——甚至还有一个滑动的秘密夹层。从我的个头刚刚能够看到桌面上母亲在写信的时候,我就喜爱这张书桌了。站在母亲的椅子旁边,眼睛盯着墨水瓶、盯着钢笔还有光洁的白纸看,我就认为写作一定就是这个世界上最为愉悦的事情了。

2. 多年以后,在母亲垂危之际,她把很多东西留给了我的姐姐和哥哥。“而这张书桌,“她一遍遍地重复着,“是留给伊丽莎白的。”我意识到母亲是用这件礼物在和我交流,这也是我期待了50年的一种交流。

3. 我的母亲是被一种维多利亚式的信仰教养成长的,这种信仰认为感情是极其隐私的。有教养的人只说有教养的话。我从没有见过母亲生气,也从没有见过她哭。我知道她爱我;但她只是用行动来表达。但是我只是个十几岁的孩子,我渴望一种母亲和女儿之间的心与心的沟通。

4. 但是这种沟通从来就没有过,我们中间出现了一条不可逾越的鸿沟。我是“太感情用事”了,而她是活“在表面上”的。她完全情愿接受用这样的表面的东西建立起的关系。而我却不愿意。

5. 随着岁月的变迁,我也有了自己的小家庭,我非常喜爱母亲造访我家的时候随她而来的那种祥和和幽默,她坐在钢琴边的姿态,房间里充满了音乐之声。但是我仍旧试图从她那里挖掘出她无法给予我的东西,就是去分享她内心深处的东西。

6. 最终我把这情感借纸笔宣泄出来。仅仅一页纸,却是我用了整整一天的时间才写完的书信。我告诉母亲我爱她,并且十分感谢她带给我们和谐的家庭气氛。我也写道,请原谅我曾是那么的挑剔。我字斟句酌地请求她用某种她

选择的方式让我知道,她的确原谅了我。

7. 我寄出了这封信,而且急切地期待着她的答复。但却什么回音也没有得到。

8. 这渴望变成了失望,继而又成了听之任之,最终归于平静。我简直不能完全确定这封信是否真的送达了母亲的手里。而我惟一确知的就是我的确写了这么一封信,我可以不再试图去使她变成某个不是她那种类型的人。在她生命的最后 15 年里,我们都在以她的方式建立起的关系中生活着——这种关系是轻松的、深情的,也是令人愉快的。

9. 现在她给予我的礼物告诉了我,也是她从来没有能够告诉我的,就是对于我选择了写作作为职业,她是十分欣慰的。

10. 在我们搬走这张书桌前,它在我姐姐的家里存放着。后来又在我们的阁楼上呆了将近一年时间,直到我把一间卧室改作书房它才找到了一个位置。

11. 当我把这张书桌搬下来的时候,由于数月搁置不用,上面已经落满了灰尘。我精心地把各个抽屉和格架擦拭干净。当我拉开那个秘密夹层时,发现里面摆放着一些纸张。有一张是我父亲的相片,有家里人结婚时的请帖,还有一封仅有一页纸的信件,叠了又叠。

12. 我在信中请求道,用任何一种您所选择的方式给我一个回复。母亲,您总是选择比任何言语都要响亮的实际行动。

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. A4 | 2. C26 | 3. D1 - 6 | 4. C15 - 16 |
| 5. C17 | 6. A24 | 7. C19 | 8. C27 |
| 9. A14 | 10. C19 | 11. A26 | 12. C19 |
| 13. A26 | 14. D7 | 15. C1 - 14 | 16. D7 |
| 17. C16 | 18. B5 | 19. C20 | 20. C15, C17, C20 |

Practice 2

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Transport Ready for Festival (B) | Back to Books (E) |
| PLA in HK (A) | Acting liaison (D) |
| UN-Iraq Talk (H) | Out with a Bang (F) |
| Hepatitis in Alarm (G) | Recycled Garbage (C) |

翻译实践

Practice 3

1. 不能分别颜色的人叫做色盲。

2. 电流能顺利通过的物质叫做导体。
3. 发动机坏掉的那辆车是上个月买的。
4. 火箭发动机能在没有空气的太空中工作。
5. 我们必须知道用来代表化学元素的符号。

Practice 4

1. 就是通过那些我得记清楚不能剪掉的花,通过那些人们故意插在地上的东西,或是通过那些遗失在草坪上的东西,我开始了解了形形色色的人。
2. 只是除除草罢了,巴卢先生的草坪也就那么一点点,用不了多少时间的。
3. 我意识得到母亲是用这件礼物在和我交流,这也是我期待了50年的一种交流。
4. 在我们搬走这张书桌前,它在我姐姐的家里存放着。
5. 我在信中请求道,用任何一种您所选择的方式给我一个回复。母亲,您总是选择比任何言语都要响亮的实际行动。

Practice 5

1. He went there on purpose to see what had happened .
2. Take your time; I 'm in no hurry .
3. We were brought up in the Party 's belief that we should serve the people .
4. As a teen-ager I yearned for heart-to-heart talks with my teacher .
5. I was astonished by the great power a novel could contain .

写作指导

Practice 6

There were several reasons why I decided to come to college . First of all, I was influenced by my friends, most of who were going to college . I found it difficult for me to choose any other career . The second reason was that I wanted to get a college degree because a college education was necessary for getting a better job . Finally, I enjoyed school, and I also wanted to continue to learn something new in college .

Practice 7

Resume

Li Wenzheng
 37 Friendship Road
 Heping District, Tianjin
 Tel: (022)37652314

Date of Birth	18/ 10/ 1984
Nationality	Chinese
Marital Status	Single
Education	1991—1997 Primary school 1997—2003 Tianjin No .1 Middle School 2003—2006 Boustead College

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

李红:您就是从澳洲来的格林先生吧?

格林先生:是的,我是西蒙·格林。

李红:格林先生,您好。我是钢铁公司的李红。

格林先生:你好,谢谢你来接我。

李红:旅程还好吗?

格林先生:很好,谢谢。

示例 2

陈先生:我可以请教一个问题吗?

格林先生:请问吧。

陈先生:我们以前见过吗?

格林先生:您去年在北京参加过销售会议吗?

陈先生:哦,我记起来了。您就是销售经理格林先生。

格林先生:是啊。再次见到您我很高兴。

示例 3

泰勒·约翰逊:我可以进来吗?

王刚:请进。

泰勒·约翰逊:我是从泰国来的泰勒·约翰逊。

王刚:哦,约翰逊先生,很高兴见到你。我是秘书王刚。

泰勒·约翰逊:很高兴见到你。我和刘先生有个预约。

王刚:请坐一下。经理马上就到。

2.

Wang Gang: Excuse me, are you Professor Carter?

Professor Carter: Yes. May I know your name?

Wang Gang: I'm Wang Gang from the English Department. Glad to meet you.

Professor Carter: I'm glad to meet you, too.

Wang Gang: Welcome to China.

Professor Carter: Thank you for coming to meet me.

3.

Zhao Bing: Aren't you Miss Ann White?

Ann White: Yes, that's right.

Zhao Bing: I'm Zhao Bing from the company. My boss asked me to come to meet you.

Ann White: Oh, thank you.

Zhao Bing: The car is waiting for you at the gate.

Ann White: You are so considerate.

4.

Li Ming: Hello . I 'm Li Ming from The Office supplies Company .

Mary: Nice to meet you, Mr . Li . I 'm Mary.

Li Ming: Hello, Mary . I 've come for the interview .

Mary: Yes, I know . I 've been waiting for you here.

Li Ming: Thank you, Mary .

Mary: My pleasure . It will be your turn soon.

5.

1)

Wang Ying: Excuse me, I 'm looking for Ms . Carter . Could you tell me where I can find her . I 'm Wang Ying .

Jennifer Carter: Oh, I 'm Jennifer Carter . How do you do, Miss Wang ?

Wang Ying: How do you do, Ms . Carter ? I 'm glad to be your interpreter at the conference .

Jennifer Carter: Thank you very much for your help, Miss Wang .

Wang Ying: It 's my pleasure .

Jennifer Carter: I 'm sure we 'll cooperate with each other very well .

2)

Li Hua: Good morning . My name is Li Hua . I 've come for an interview .

Receptionist: Good morning, Miss Li . Please wait a moment . I 'll tell Mrs . Smith you are here .

(To the Phone) Mrs . Smith, Miss Li Hua 's arrived for the interview . Shall I take her in ? . . . OK .

(To Li Hua) Miss Li, Mrs . Smith is expecting you in her office . Come with me, please .

Li Hua: Thank you .

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) C 2) D 3) A 4) B 5) C
6) A 7) D 8) B 9) A 10) B

对话原文:

1) W: I 've always wanted to visit Beijing with you .

M: Why not next month ?

Q: What does the man mean ?

2) M: Would you like me to bring you some coffee for a break ?

W: Could you wait just a while ? I 'm trying to finish this report before the meeting .

Q: What does the woman want ?

3) W: I 'd like to get away for the long weekend, but I don 't know where to go .

M: Have you thought about the beach ?

Q: What does the man mean ?

4) W: Could you drive a little faster ? My plane takes off at 4:30 .

M: Don 't worry, Madam . You 'll be there in five minutes .

Q: Where is the woman going ?

5) W: Excuse me, but could you tell me the way to the motorbike shop ?

M: I 'm sorry I can 't help you . You see, I 'm a stranger here myself .

Q: Why can 't the woman tell the man the way to the motorbike shop ?

6) M: What 's the matter, Paul ? You look worried .

W: I 've just taken my chemistry exam and I 'm pretty sure I failed it . I don 't know where the professor got some of those questions .

Q: Why is Paul worried ?

7) W: I wonder if Mary will be here by 9:00 . She 's supposed to be here now .

M: Her husband said she left by 8:30, so she should be here by 9:15 at the latest .

Q: What time will Mary probably arrive ?

8) M: I think it 's impossible for me to pass this class .

W: You should never say " impossible . "

Q: What does the woman mean ?

9) M: Could you please explain the assignment for Monday, Miss Smith ?

W: Certainly . Read the first chapter in your textbook and come to class prepared to discuss what you 've read .

Q: What is the possible relationship between the two speakers ?

10) W: I 'm looking for a part-time job on campus .

M: Then you 've come to the right place . The campus employment office is here just to help students like you find jobs on campus .

Q: Where is the conversation most probably taking place ?

B .

1 .

Question 1) : How did Mr . Smith finally greet his special audience ?

Answer: " Well, anyway . I 'm glad to see so many of you here today . "

Question 2) : Did the final greeting sound all right ?

Answer: No, it didn 't, because he could not be glad to see so many prisoners .

2 .

1) Al Smith was the new governor of New York State .

2) One day, he paid a visit to the state prison .

3) The head of the prison asked Mr . Smith to give a speech to the prisoners .

4) He remembered that once a man becomes a prisoner, he is no longer a citizen .

短文原文:

Al Smith became governor of New York State . One day, he went to visit the state prison . The head of the prison asked Mr . Smith to say something to the prisoners, but Mr . Smith didn 't know how to greet this kind of audience . Finally, he said, " My dear fellow citizens, " then he remembered that when a man goes to prison, he is no longer a citizen . Mr . Smith changed his greeting into " My dear fellow prisoners, " But that didn 't sound right either . So he said, " Well, anyway . I 'm glad to see so many of you here today . "

3 .

Our summer holidays last three months . During the 1) last week of the holiday, we get ready for 2) school . We buy many things such as new pens and 3) notebooks . On the first day of school, we see all our old 4) friends again and

we tell each other about our 5) holidays . After that we go into the classroom . It is so 6) hard to keep quiet and pay attention to our teacher . Our teacher always says 7) with a laugh: “ You forget more in three months than you 8) learn in a year !”

4 . 1) C 2) D 3) D

短文原文：

Some people seem to be better at learning languages . They can pick up new vocabulary , master rules of grammar , and learn to write in the new language more quickly than others . They do not seem to be any more intelligent than others , so what makes language learning so much easier for them ? Perhaps if we take a close look at these successful language learners we may discover a few of the techniques which make language learning easier for them .

First of all , successful language learners are independent learners . They do not depend on the book or the teacher ; they discover their own way to learn the language . Instead of waiting for the teacher to explain , they try to find the patterns and the rules of themselves . They are good guessers who look for clues and form their own conclusions . When they guess wrong , they guess again . They try to learn from their mistakes .

Successful language learning is active learning . Therefore , successful learners do not wait for a chance to use the language ; they look for such a chance . They find people who speak the language and they ask these people to correct them when they make mistake . They will try anything to communicate . They are not afraid to repeat what they hear or to say strange things ; they are willing to make mistakes and try again . When communication is difficult , they can accept information that is inexact or incomplete . It is more important for them to learn to think in the language than to know the meaning of every word .

Finally , successful language learners are learners with a purpose . They want to learn the language because they are interested in it and the people who speak it . It is necessary for them to learn it in order to communicate with these people and to learn from them . They find it easy to practice using the language regularly because they want to learn with it .

Questions :

- 1) According to the passage why are some people better at learning languages ?
- 2) What do successful learners do with their mistakes ?
- 3) What is the main purpose to learn a foreign language for successful language learner ?

2

UNIT

Text A

课文解惑

- 1 . 【原文】 For centuries town and country have been regarded as being in opposition to each other .
- 【译文】 多少世纪以来,人们都认为城市和乡村是相互对立的。
- 【注释】 短语 in opposition to (sb / sth .) 的意思是“反对,持相反意见”。
- 【例句】 We found ourselves *in opposition to* several colleagues on this issue . 我们发现自己与几位同事意见相悖。
The friends found themselves *in opposition to* each other . 这几个朋友发现彼此意见相悖。
- 2 . 【原文】 It has suggested that the superficial differences between the two — wide-open spaces contrasting with brick and concrete — are less important than the contrasting attitudes towards town and country .
- 【译文】 也有观点认为,这两者在表面上的差异——广袤的空地与砖石混凝土的反差——并没有人们之于城市和乡村的态度上的对立那么重要。
- 【注释】 contrast with 的意思是“与……形成对照,映衬”。
- 【例句】 Her actions *contrasted sharply with* her promises . 她的行动与她的许诺形成鲜明的对照。
Towering mountains *contrast with* desert areas . 高耸的山脉映衬着沙漠地区。
- 3 . 【原文】 ... given the choice we would prefer to live in the country away from the dirt and noise of a large city .

- 【译文】** 如果让我来选择,我宁愿躲开脏乱而喧嚣的城市而去乡村生活,……
- 【注释】** 分词 *given* 的意思是“如果有,假定”。
- 【例句】** *Given good health, I hope to finish the work this year.* 如果健康状况良好,我想在今年把这工作结束。
Given the opportunity he might have become an outstanding scientist. 如果有机会,他也有可能成为一名杰出的科学家。
4. **【原文】** I have managed to convince myself that if it weren't for my job I would immediately head out for the open spaces and to back to nature in some sleepy village buried in the country .
- 【译文】** 我已经设法说服了我自己,如果不是为了工作,我一定会立刻奔向那开阔的空间,回归那隐秘于乡间的寂静村落的自然之中。
- 【注释】** (1) *if it were not / had not been for (sb / sth .)* 的意思是“要不是”,通常与虚拟语气连用。
- 【例句】** You wouldn't be anywhere *if it were not for* Ruth . 要不是露丝,你哪里也去不了。
If it had not been for the doctor's care I should not be speaking to you now . 要不是医生的呵护,我现在就不会和你讲话了。
- 【注释】** (2) *head for* 的意思是“去往(某地)”。
- 【例句】** The boat was *heading for* some rocks . 船正朝着一些礁石驶去。
He *headed straight for* the door . 他径直向着门走去。
5. **【原文】** The sense of belonging to a community tends to disappear when you live fifteen floors up .
- 【译文】** 如果你是居住在 15 层以上的,社区的归属感觉就丧失殆尽了。
- 【注释】** *belong to (sb / sth .)* 的意思是“属于”。
- 【例句】** These books *belong to* me . 这些书属于我。
He has never *belonged to* a trade union . 他从未加入工会。
6. **【原文】** Children become aggressive and nervous — cooped up at home all day, with nowhere to play; . . .
- 【译文】** 孩子们由于整天被关在家里,没有地方可玩,而更具攻击性,并且神经紧张;……
- 【注释】** (1) 短语动词 *coop up* 的意思是“困禁,拘禁”。
- 【例句】** I have been *cooped up* indoors all day . 我被困在室内整整一天了。
All last week we were *cooped up* in the house by bad weather . 上周我们被恶劣的天气关在家里整整一个星期。
- 【注释】** (2) *nowhere* 本身是一个副词,后面可以带一个动词不定式,一起作动词宾语。
- 【例句】** The poor children had *nowhere to play* . 那些可怜的孩子没有地方可玩。
We could find *nowhere to park the car*, so Dad had to drive it home again . 我们找不到地方泊车,所以爸爸只好又把车开回家了。
7. **【原文】** . . . their mothers feel isolated from the rest of the world .

【译文】……这些孩子的母亲们也会觉得与世隔绝了。

【注释】名词 *the rest* 在这里的意思是“其余的人或事物”。

【例句】Take what you want and throw *the rest* away . 把你想要的拿走,剩下的扔掉。

Some agree with Jim, but *the rest* agree with Sam . 有的人和吉姆的意见一致,但是其余的人却和萨姆的意见一致。

8 . 【原文】 Strangely enough, whereas in the past the inhabitants of one street all knew each other, nowadays people on the same floor in tower blocks don 't even say hello to each other .

【译文】足以让我们感到奇怪的是,以往住在同一条街道上的老住户们都相互认识;而现在,大厦中同一楼层的居民之间互相连个招呼都不打。

【注释】连词 *whereas* 的意思是“反之,却”,用于表示对比。

【例句】Some praise him, *whereas* others condemn him . 有些人称赞他,而其他人却指责他。

The wages of men averaged \$ 54 .54, *whereas* women 's wages averaged but \$ 42 .13 . 男人的工资平均为 54 .54 美元,而女人的工资平均却只有 42 .13 美元。

9 . 【原文】 Country life, on the other hand, differs from this kind of isolated existence in that a sense of community generally binds the inhabitants of small villages together .

【译文】另一方面,乡村生活与这种隔绝的城市生活却相去甚远:一种社区意识就能够把小村落的常住居民团结在一起。

【注释】短语 *in that* 的意思是“因为”,但是不能放在句首。

【例句】Men differ from brutes *in that* they can think and speak . 人之不同于禽兽,在于人会思考,会讲话。

I could understand his point of view, *in that* I 'd been in a similar position myself . 我能理解他的观点,因为我自己也有过类似的处境。

10 . 【原文】 People have the advantage of knowing that there is always someone to turn to when they need help .

【译文】得益于这一点,人们知道如果需要帮助,总会找到帮手。

【注释】(1)短语 *have the advantage of* 的意思是“有……的优点,优点是”。

【例句】He *has the advantage of* a steady job . 他有工作稳定的有利条件。

Compared with iron, aluminum *has the advantage of* lightness . 与铁相比,铝的优点是重量轻。

【注释】(2)短语动词 *turn to (sb .)* 的意思是“找(某人寻求帮助等)”。

【例句】The child *turned to* its mother for comfort . 那孩子向母亲寻求安慰。

They always *turn to* me when they are in trouble . 他们遇到麻烦总是找我帮忙。

11 . 【原文】 ... it is also true that you are cut off from the exciting and important events that take place in cities .

【译文】……而说到发生在城市里令人兴奋的和重大的事件,你就被隔绝在外了,这也是事实。

【注释】短语动词 *cut off* 的意思是“隔绝”。

- 【例句】 The children were *cut off* by the incoming tide . 孩子们被上涨的潮水困住了。
The village was *cut off* from the outside world by heavy snow for a month . 村庄因大雪与外界已经隔绝一个月了。
- 12 . 【原文】 Shopping becomes a major problem, and for anything slightly out of the ordinary you have to go on an expedition to the nearest large town .
【译文】 购物成了首要的难题, 稍微特别一点物品, 你都得跑到距离最近的大城市去买。
【注释】 短语 out of the ordinary 的意思是“ 不寻常的, 特殊的 ”。
【例句】 Her new house is certainly *out of the ordinary* . 她新买的房子的确与众不同。
His behavior is nothing *out of the ordinary* . 他的举止没有什么异常。
- 13 . 【原文】 But one of its main advantages is that you are at the centre of things, and that life doesn't come to an end at half-past nine at night .
【译文】 而这种生活的优点之一就是, 你处于种种事物的中心, 在晚上九点半的时候不会感到一天的生活已经结束了。
【注释】 短语 come to an end 的意思是“ 结束 ”。
【例句】 The meeting *came to an end* at last . 会议终于结束了。
As soon as the contradiction ceases, life, too, *comes to an end* . 这一矛盾一停止, 生命也就结束。
- 14 . 【原文】 Some people have found (or rather bought) a compromise between the two; ...
【译文】 有些人已经找到了(或者不如说是买到了)这两者之间的折中点;
【注释】 短语 or rather 的意思是“ 更确切地说 ”。
【例句】 She worked as a secretary, *or rather*, a typist . 她做秘书工作, 更确切地说, 是个打字员。
He had to walk — *or rather* run — to the office . 他不得不走着去, 更确切地说, 跑着去上班。
- 15 . 【原文】 They generally have about as much sensitivity as the plastic flowers they leave behind ...
【译文】 这类人群的敏感程度与他们遗留在城市里的塑料花差不多.....
【注释】 短语动词 leave behind 的意思是“ 留下 ”。
【例句】 It *left behind* a long train of problems and difficulties . 它留下许多问题和困难。
I've *left* my coat *behind* in the bus . 我把外衣丢在公共汽车上了。
- 16 . 【原文】 ... they are polluted with strange ideas about change and improvement which they force on to the unwilling original inhabitants of the villages .
【译文】 他们已经被一些关于变化和进步的奇异想法所污染, 而他们又要把这些奇异的想法强加给并不情愿接受这些东西的原有村民的身上。
【注释】 force ... on to/ onto/ on (sb .) 的意思是“ 把.....强加给(某人) ”。
【例句】 The teacher has no right to *force* his own views *onto* the children . 这位老师没有权力把他自己的观点强加给这些孩子。
He didn't want to be paid, but we *forced* the money *on* him because we knew he needed it . 他不想收费, 但我们把这些钱强塞给他, 因为我们知道他需要。

17. 【原文】 What then of my dreams of leaning on a cottage gate, chewing a piece of grass and murmuring " morning " to the locals as they pass .
- 【译文】 那么我的那些梦想又如何呢？这些梦想就是斜倚在农舍门口，嘴里咀嚼着一棵青草，有当地人经过的时候，含混不清地道一声“早上好”。
- 【注释】 动词 murmur 的意思是“低声说”。
- 【例句】 The shy girl *murmured* her thanks . 那个羞怯的姑娘低声说了声谢谢。
He *murmured* something she didn 't quite catch . 他低声说了些什么，她没听懂。
18. 【原文】 I 'm keen on the idea, but you see there 's my cat, Toby .
- 【译文】 我是如此钟情于我的这些想法，可是你看，我有我的猫咪，它叫托比。
- 【注释】 be keen on (sth .) 的意思是“热中于，对……着迷”。
- 【例句】 I 'm not too *keen on* jazz . 我不太喜欢爵士音乐。
They *are not very keen on* the idea . 对那种想法他们不大热心。
19. 【原文】 I 'm not at all sure that he would take to all that fresh air and exercise in the long grass .
- 【译文】 我可不敢保证它会喜欢那种新鲜的空气，它会喜欢在高高的蒿草中散步。
- 【注释】 短语动词 take to (sb / sth .) 的意思是“喜欢上”。
- 【例句】 He hasn 't *taken to* his new school . 他不喜欢他的新学校。
I *took to* the child the moment I saw him . 我一看见那个孩子就喜欢上他了。
这个短语动词的另一个意思是“开始从事”。
- 【例句】 He *took to* gardening in his retirement . 他退休后开始从事园艺。
Since when have you *taken to* cooking ? 你是从什么时候起从事烹饪的？
20. 【原文】 I mean, can you see him mixing with all those hearty males down on the farm ?
- 【译文】 我是说，你会看到它和农场上的那些公猫一块玩耍吗？
- 【注释】 mix with (sb .) 的意思是“与……交往，与……打交道”。
- 【例句】 In my job, I *mix with* all sorts of people . 在工作中，我与各种各样的人打交道。
He finds it hard to *mix with* men of his age . 他觉得很难与同龄人交往。

词汇精华

oppose v .

1 . 反对

【例句】 He *opposed* the proposal to build a new hall .

【译文】 他反对建造新礼堂的提议。

【例句】 He is an honest man ; I say it, even though I have *opposed* him .

【译文】 他是个诚实的人；即使我曾反对过他，我仍然这样说。

2 . be opposed to (sth .) 反对,不赞成

【例句】 Oh, I 'm not *opposed to* reform .

【译文】 噢,我并不反对改革。

【例句】 He had *been violently opposed to* it at first .

【译文】 他一开始曾经强烈反对过这件事。

opposition *n.* 反对;对手

convince *vt.*

1 . 使相信(宾语后接介词 of 或 that 从句)

【例句】 How can I *convince* you *of* her honesty ?

【译文】 我怎样才能使你相信她是诚实的 ?

【例句】 What she said *convinced* me *that* I was mistaken .

【译文】 她的话使我认识到我错了。

2 . 说服

【例句】 What *convinced* you to vote for them ?

【译文】 是什么使你投了他们的票 ?

【例句】 We *convinced* Anne to go by train rather than plane .

【译文】 我们说服了安妮乘火车去,而不是乘飞机。

isolate *vt.*

1 . 使孤立,使隔离

【例句】 When a person has an infectious disease, he is usually *isolated* from other people .

【译文】 一个人患传染病时,他通常被隔离。

【例句】 Several villages have been *isolated* by heavy snowfalls .

【译文】 因为下大雪,有几个村庄与外界隔绝了。

2 . 分解,分离

【例句】 Scientists have *isolated* the virus causing the epidemic .

【译文】 科学家已经将引起这种流行病的病毒分离出来。

isolation *n.* 孤立,隔离;分离

breed *vt.*

1 . (动物)生育,孕育

【例句】 Some animals will not *breed* when kept in cages .

【译文】 有些动物在笼子里圈养不生子。

【例句】 Birds *breed* in the spring .

【译文】 鸟类在春季繁殖。

2 . 养殖,培育

【例句】 Many farmers *breed* cows and sheep .

【译文】 许多农民养殖牛和羊。

【例句】 After many experiments, they have *bred* four strains of high-yielding rice .

【译文】 经过许多次试验,他们培育出四个高产水稻品种。

3 . 养育,训练

【例句】 Northern countries *breed* people who can live in cold weather .

【译文】 北方的国家培养出能在寒冷天气中生活的人们。

【例句】 He is a countryman born and *bred*, and he doesn 't like big cities .

【译文】 他是在农村出生长大的,他不喜欢大城市。

4 . 导致,造成

【例句】 Lack of achievement in work sometimes *breeds* pessimism .

【译文】 工作中没有成就有时会产生悲观主义。

【例句】 Careless driving *breeds* accidents .

【译文】 粗心大意的驾驶会造成事故。

breed *n.* 品种

lean *v.*

1 . 倾斜, 偏向 【例句】 Just *lean* forward for a moment .

【译文】 请向前靠一会儿。

【例句】 The post *leans* to the left .

【译文】 那根柱子向左倾斜。

2 . 倚, 靠 (against/ on)

【例句】 The old man *leant* on his stick .

【译文】 那为老人倚着拐杖。

【例句】 She went to the window and *leant* against it .

【译文】 她向窗户走去靠在那里。

3 . lean ... against/ on (sth .) 把.....靠在.....上

【例句】 The workmen *leant* their shovels *against* the fence and went to lunch .

【译文】 工人们把铁锹靠在栅栏上去吃午饭了。

【例句】 He *leant* his bicycle *against* the wall .

【译文】 他把自行车靠在墙上。

leaning *n.* 倾向

frighten *vt.*

1 . 使恐惧, 使吃惊

【例句】 Loud traffic *frightens* horses .

【译文】 喧嚣的交通使马受惊。

【例句】 Sorry, I didn 't mean to *frighten* you .

【译文】 对不起, 我本来不是有意吓唬你的。

2 . frighten sb . into (doing) 吓得.....做某事

【例句】 News of the robberies *frightened* many people *into* fitting new locks to their doors .

【译文】 强盗抢劫的消息吓得许多人在门上换了新锁。

【例句】 He *frightened* the old lady *into* signing the paper .

【译文】 他威胁老妇人在文件上签字。

3 . frighten sb . out of (doing) 吓得.....不敢做某事

【例句】 The presence of the police *frightened* many criminals *out of* attempting further crimes .

【译文】 警察在场使许多罪犯不敢试图再次犯罪。

fright *n.* 惊恐

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . The main differences between city life and country life are as follows . First, city life is busy and exciting , while country life is quiet and peaceful . Secondly, city people live in a dirty and noisy environment, while people living in the country are always in close contact with nature and therefore life is healthier and free from many diseases . Thirdly, city people enjoy rich cultural and political life, while people living in the country have little possibility of going to a new show or the latest movie . Fourthly, in cities the sense of belonging to a community disappears, while in the county people have a sense of togetherness .

2 . (open)

Exercise 2

1 . B 2 . A 3 . D 4 . A 5 . D

Exercise 3

1 . T 2 . T 3 . F 4 . F 5 . T

Exercise 4

Type of life	Advantages	Disadvantages
City life	1 . You are at the <u>centre</u> of things . 2 . Life lasts until <u>late at night</u> .	1 . <u>Dirty</u> , noisy and <u>impersonal</u> . 2 . The sense of <u>belonging to a community</u> disappears .
Country life	1 . You have a sense of <u>togetherness</u> . 2 . You enjoy a <u>peaceful and quiet life</u> .	1 . Being cut off from the <u>exciting and important events taking place in cities</u> . 2 . Little possibility of <u>going to a new show or the latest movie</u> . 3 . <u>Shopping</u> becomes a major problem .

Exercise 5

1 . 1) 2) 3) 4)
2 . 1) v . 2) n . 3) v . 4) v .
3 . 1) n . 2) v . 3) n . 4) v .

Exercise 6

1 . slight 2 . contrast 3 . leaned 4 . superficial

- 5 . frightening 6 . isolated 7 . compromise 8 . convinced
9 . improvement 10 . preference

Exercise 7

- 1 . leave . . behind 2 . turn to 3 . head out 4 . lean on
5 . suffered from 6 . took to 7 . contrast . . .with 8 . keen on
9 . isolated from 10 . cut . . .off

Exercise 8

- 1 . C 2 . A 3 . B 4 . D 5 . D
6 . B 7 . C 8 . A 9 . B 10 . C

Exercise 9

- 1 . I wish they didn't make such a noise every night .
2 . I wish I could give up smoking .
3 . I wish I knew her telephone number .
4 . I wish hadn't painted the door red .
5 . I wish I had been here when he came .
6 . I wish I hadn't eaten so much .
7 . I wish wouldn't drop litter in the street .
8 . I wish I were rich and could afford to buy that car .

Exercise 10

- 1 . The island we visited was beautiful but crowded .
2 . Mary types slowly but accurately .
3 . One should look over a document carefully before signing it and get advice when needed .
4 . He found it not only annoying but also insulting to be asked for identification each time .
5 . Byron can speak Chinese but he can't write it .
6 . To listen to fine music and to have simulating conversation with good friends are two pleasures in life .

参考译文

回归自然

1 . 多少世纪以来,人们都认为城市和乡村是相互对立的。也有观点认为,这两者在表面上的差异——广袤的空地与砖石混凝土的反差——并没有人们之于城市和乡村的态度上的对立那么重要。

2 . 许许多多的城市人总是在说,如果让我来选择,我宁愿躲开脏乱而喧嚣的城市而去乡村生活,我就是这类人群中的一员。我已经设法说服我自己,如果不是为了工作,我一定会立刻奔向那开阔的空间,回归那隐秘于乡间的寂静村落的自然之中。然而,这一梦想又有什么现实意义呢?

3. 城市有可能是令人恐慌的地方。大多数的城市人口都挤在摩天大厦之中,环境嘈杂、肮脏,人情淡漠。如果你是居住在 15 层以上的,社区的归属感觉就丧失殆尽了。从窗户可以看到的仅仅只是天空,或是其他的公寓大厦。孩子们由于整天被关在家里,没有地方可玩,而变得有攻击性,并且神经紧张;这些孩子的母亲们也会觉得与世隔绝了。足以让我们感到奇怪的是,以往住在同一条街道上的老住户们都相互认识;而现在,大厦中同一楼层的居民之间互相连个招呼都不打。

4. 另一方面,乡村生活与这种隔绝的城市生活却相去甚远:一种社区意识就能够把小村落的常住居民团结在一起。得益于这一点,人们知道如果需要帮助,总会找到帮手。但是乡村生活也有其缺点。诚然,在那里你是生活在朋友们之中;而说到发生在城市里令人兴奋的和重大的事件,你就被隔绝在外了,这也是事实。去观看最新的演出或是最新的电影的可能性几乎没有。购物成了首要的难题,稍微特别一点物品,你都得跑到距离最近的大城市去买。迁往乡村的城市人往往感到十分压抑,就是源于这种难以忍受的寂寥和平静。

5. 那么,这种矛盾的解决方法又是什么呢?乡村生活具有平和和安宁这种优点的同时,又有与现实隔绝的缺点;城市生活引起人们的神经官能症和孤独感——无休止的噪声刺激着人们的神经。而这种生活的优点之一就是,你处于种种事物的中心,在晚上九点半的时候不会感到一天的生活已经结束了。有些人已经找到了(或者不如说是买到了)这两者之间的折中点:他们表示出对于“平静的生活”的偏爱,使得他们愿意从郊区迁到乡村去,但是和大城市的距离却应该使他们可以搭乘班车往来。一般说来,这类人群的敏感程度与他们遗留在城市里的塑料花差不多——他们已经被一些关于变化和进步的奇异想法所污染,而他们又要把这些奇异的想法强加给并不情愿接受这些东西的原有村民的身上。

6. 那么我的那些梦想又如何呢?这些梦想就是斜倚在农舍门口,嘴里咀嚼着一棵青草,有当地人经过的时候,含混不清地道一声“早上好”。我是如此钟情于我的这些想法,可是你看,我有我的猫咪,它叫托比。我可不敢保证它会喜欢那种新鲜的空气,它会喜欢在高高的蒿草中散步。我是说,你会看到它和农场上的那些公猫一块玩耍吗?不会的,每天晚上,它倒是宁可呆在电子模拟炭火的旁边呢。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Nuclear Power: Advantages That Outweighs the Risks

【译文】 核动力:益处大于风险

【注释】 动词 outweigh 的意思是“比……更重要”。

【例句】 This *outweighs* all other considerations. 这一点比所有其他因素更重要。

The advantages far *outweigh* the disadvantages. 有利情况远远超过不利情况。

2. 【原文】 The views expressed in the debate on the safety of nuclear power have come mainly from the interested parties — the United Kingdom Atomic Energy Authority and British Nuclear Fuels Limited on the one hand, and the various environmental groups on the other.

【译文】 在关于核动力安全的辩论中所阐述的各方观点,主要来自与其有着利害关系的两个方

面——一方是联合王国原子能管理局和英国核燃料股份有限公司,另一方是各种环境保护组织。

【注释】 (1)形容词 *interested* 在这里的意思是“有关的”。

【例句】 The lawyer invited the *interested* parties to discuss the problem . 律师邀请有关的各方来讨论这一问题。

He is an *interested* party and cannot serve on the jury . 他是有利害关系的一方,不宜参加陪审团。

【注释】 (2)短语 *on the other = on the other hand*, 在前面使用了 *on the one hand* 的情况下,后面就可以省略 *hand*。

【例句】 *On the one hand* I admire his gifts, but *on the other* I distrust his judgment . 一方面我羡慕他的天分,但是另一方面我不相信他的判断能力。

On the one hand you accept her presents; *on the other*, you are rude to the whole family . What really is your attitude to them ? 一方面你接受她的礼物,另一方面你却又对她的全家那么没礼貌。你对他们的态度到底是怎样的?

此外,在列举当事人的双方时(尤其当表示这两方的短语比较长时,例如原句中那样), *on the other hand ... on the other* 的意思是“以……为一方,以……为另一方”,这时则把它们分别放在双方的后面。

【例句】 Thus in 1857 there came about a war between Australia *on the one hand* and Piedmont and France *on the other* . 于是,在 1857 年就爆发了以澳大利亚为一方、以皮德蒙特和法国为另一方之间的战争。

3 . **【原文】** It is not surprising therefore that the public is confused by the many contradictory statements, some of which have been sensational .

【译文】 因此,许多论点对立,其中有些还非常耸人听闻,而使得公众不辨真伪、无所适从也就不足为奇了。

【注释】 这个句子末尾的 *some of which have been sensational* 是一个定语从句,修饰名词 *statements*,但是和一般的定语从句不同之处在于,关系代词没有出现在从句的开头,而是出现在表示“一部分”的介词 *of* 之后,意思是“其中……”。

【例句】 There are two left, *one of which* is almost finished and *the other of which* is not quite . 还剩下两个,其中一个已经几乎完成,另一个尚未完工。

After having had twelve months' practice, *in the last months of which* no attempt had been made at publication, I decided to make one more effort . 我这样做了了一年,其中最后几个月没有试图发表什么,在这之后我决定再试一次。

There are 110 elements found in nature, *most of which* are metals . 自然界已经发现的元素有 110 种,其中大多数是金属。

There are various plastics, *the most important of which* is transparent plastics . 有各种不同的塑料,其中最重要的是透明塑料。

4 . **【原文】** Furthermore, most of the responsible contributions to the debate have been written in

such highly technical terms as to be incomprehensible to the lay reader .

【译文】 加之, 辩论各方的重要文稿都是使用了技术性极强的术语撰写, 也使得外行的读者难以理解。

【注释】 短语 such (...) as to (do) 的意思是“ 这样.....以致(便) ”。

【例句】 The pain in her foot wasn't *such as* to stop her walking . 她的脚疼还不至于影响她走路。

So I went about my job in *such a way as to* try to kill the two birds with one stone . 我这样开始我的工作, 以便试图一箭双雕。

5 . 【原文】 If the world is not to face a substantial fall in living standards with a very real risk of civil upheaval — if not war ...

【译文】 如果世界想要不去面对由于生活水平的下降而引发的内乱的风险——如果不是战争的话.....

【注释】 动词 face 的意思是“ 面对, 面临 ”。

【例句】 Who's the man *facing* me ? 面对我的那个人是谁 ?

He realized that he was *facing* a ticklish situation . 他意识到, 他正面临着一个棘手的局势。

6 . 【原文】 ... there is no alternative but to rely on a major contribution of energy from nuclear sources .

【译文】这样除了依赖核能源能提供的主要贡献之外, 我们也别无良策。

【注释】 短语 no alternative but to (do) 的意思是“ 别无选择, 只有..... ”。

【例句】 I had *no alternative but to* walk home . 我别无选择, 只有走回家去。

There's *no alternative but to* fight . 别无选择, 只有战斗。

7 . 【原文】 However, as it is, there are genuine anxieties which must be answered objectively .

【译文】 然而, 即使如此, 现在也确实存在很多的隐忧需要给予客观的回答。

【注释】 短语 as it is 的意思是“ 事实上, 按照目前情况 ”。

【例句】 I thought things would get better, but *as it is* they are getting worse . 我原以为情况会好转, 可是事实上却在恶化。

We were hoping to have a holiday next week — *as it is*, we may not be able to get away . 我们盼望下周能休假, 可是照目前情况看, 我们可能脱不开身。

8 . 【原文】 These fall under the following broad headings: ...

【译文】 这些隐忧主要有以下几个方面:

【注释】 短语 fall under (sth .) 的意思是“ 列在(某项), 属.....管辖 ”。

【例句】 What heading do these items *fall under* ? 这些项目归在什么标题下 ?

The village you speak of does not *fall under* my jurisdiction . 你所谈到的那个村庄不属于我的权限。

9 . 【原文】 The long-term effects of the low level radiation to which workers in the plants and the public may be exposed; ...

【译文】核工厂的工人受到的核辐射,以及公众有可能遭到的核辐射,这类低度的辐射所造成的长期的后果;.....

【注释】expose ... to (sth.)的意思是“使暴露于,使面临”。

【例句】Don't *expose* it to the sun.不要使它受到太阳照射。

The general *exposed* his men to unnecessary risks.那位将军使他的士兵面临不必要的危险。

10. 【原文】We will deal with these in turn.

【译文】对于这些问题,我们逐个论述。

【注释】短语 in turn 的意思是“轮流,依次”。

【例句】The girl called out their names *in turn*.那女孩依次叫出了他们的名字。

They answered the teacher's questions *in turn*.他们轮流回答老师的问题。

11. 【原文】However, two facts emerge which seem to us significant: ...

【译文】然而,有两个事实的出现好像是至关重要的:.....

【注释】动词 emerge 的意思是“出现,为人所知”。

【例句】No new evidence *emerged* during the enquiry.询问中没有发现新的证据。

The moon *emerged* from behind the clouds.月亮从云层后面露了出来。

12. 【原文】... the average exposure of the public to radiation as a result of a nuclear power is only a minute fraction (0.2 per cent) of the radiation from other sources — mainly natural.

【译文】.....公众所接触到来自于核动力的放射平均值仅仅是他们接触到来自其他能源——这里指的主要是自然能源——的非常小的部分(为0.2%)。

【注释】短语 as a result of 的意思是“由于.....的结果”。

【例句】He is unable to go to work *as a result of* the fall from his horse.他由于从马上摔下来而无法上班。

He was late *as a result of* snow.由于下雪他迟到了。

13. 【原文】However, under no circumstances could a thermal power reactor of any type explode like an atomic bomb.

【译文】但是,在任何情况下,任何类型的热动力反应堆都不应该像原子弹那样爆炸。

【注释】短语 under no circumstances 的意思是“在任何情况下都不”。

【例句】We must *under no circumstances* relax our vigilance.我们在任何情况下都不应该放松警惕。

如果这个短语放在句首则句子需要倒装。

【例句】*Under no circumstances* should you lend him any money.你绝不能借钱给他。

I made my mind up that *under no circumstances* could I agree to such a principle.我打定主意,在任何情况下都不能同意这种原则。

14. 【原文】The spent fuel elements from any reactor are highly radioactive and contain fission and other products with half lives ranging from a few seconds to many thousands of years.

【译文】 经反应堆用过的燃料元素都具有很高的放射性,而且含有裂变和其他的产物,这些产物的半衰期可以从几秒一直到数万年。

【注释】 range from ... to 的意思是“从……到……不等,在……范围内扩展”。

【例句】 Their ages *range from 25 to 50* .他们的年龄在 25 岁到 50 岁之间。

His interests *ranged from chess to canoeing* .他爱好广泛,从下棋到划独木舟都喜欢。

15 . 【原文】 It should be realized, however, that the radiation (of whatever sort) emitted by a particular element is caused by the process of its radioactive decay .

【译文】 然而,我们应该认识到,某一种元素放射性(无论是哪一种放射)都是由该元素的放射衰变的过程而产生的。

【注释】 动词 emit 的意思是“发射,发出”。

【例句】 A volcano *emits* smoke, lava and ashes .火山喷出烟雾、岩浆和灰烬。

She *emitted* a cry of pain .她发出了疼痛的喊叫。

16 . 【原文】 There would be obvious advantages from the point of view of long-term storage if the concentrates could be converted to a solid, and a process has been worked out for turning them into an insoluble glass .

【译文】 从长期储藏的观点出发,如果这种浓缩的废料可以转变成为固态,那么其优越性就十分明显了,而现在已经发明出一种工艺,可以把这种浓缩液体转化成一种不溶解的玻璃。

【注释】 (1) point of view 的意思是“观点”。

【例句】 This is unacceptable from my *point of view* .从我的观点来看,这是不可接受的。

What 's your *point of view* on nuclear power ?你对核动力的观点如何 ?

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 work out 的意思是“制定,想出”。

【例句】 The general *worked out* a new plan of attack .将军制定出了新的进攻方案。

The engineers *worked out* a system of getting electricity to the factory .工程师们设计出了一个向工厂供电的系统。

语法告诉你

虚拟语气(三)

1 . 在动词 wish 后面的从句(that 通常省略)中要用虚拟语气,用过去式表示现在的情况,用过去完成式表示过去的情况,意思是“但愿,要是……就好了”,例如:

I wish he *would* not go out every night .但愿他不要每天晚上都出去。

I wish I *were* as young as you .我要是有你那样年轻就好了。

I wish you *hadn't* told me all this .但愿当初没有把这一切都告诉我。

2 . 在 had rather 后面的从句(that 通常省略)中要用虚拟语气,用过去式表示现在和将来的情况,用过去完成式表示过去的情况,意思是“宁愿”,had 通常缩写为 'd, 例如:

I'd rather you *told* me the truth . 我宁愿你把真相告诉我。

I'd rather you *didn't ask* me to speak . 我希望你别叫我发言。

I'd rather you *hadn't told* him about this . 我宁愿你没有把这件事告诉他。

3 . 在 *as if* *as though* 引导的状语从句中要用虚拟语气, 用过去式表示现在的情况, 用过去完成式表示过去的情况, 意思是“ 仿佛 ”, 例如:

He behaved as if nothing *had happened* . 看他的举止好像什么也没发生似的。

I remember it vividly as though it *were* tonight . 这件事对我来说历历在目, 就仿佛是今晚上的事。

He treats the old lady, as if she *were* his mother . 他对待那位老妇人就像对待自己的母亲。

在 *look*, *seem*, *taste*, *smell* 后面, *as if* 引导的从句中也可以用陈述语气, 例如:

It looks as if it 's *going* to rain . 看样子好像就要下雨。

It seems as if we *shall have* to walk . 看上去我们得步行了。

The milk smells as if it *is* sour . 这奶闻起来好像酸了。

4 . 在 *it 's* (*high*) *time* 后的定语从句中要用虚拟语气, 动词用过去式, 意思是“ 现在是必须……的时候了 ”, 例如:

It 's time we *made* a decision . 我们该做决定了。

I think it 's time they *were* taught a lesson . 我认为该给他们一点教训了。

John 's suit was old and it was high time he *bought* a new one . 约翰的衣服旧了, 他该买件新的了。

5 . 在 *if only* 引导的句子中要用虚拟语气, 用过去式表示现在的情况, 用过去完成式表示过去的情况, 意思是“ 要是……就好了 ”, 例如:

If only I *could* swim . 我要是会游泳就好了。

If it would *stop* raining . 要是雨停了就好了。

If only I *had gone* by taxi . 要是打车就好了。

If only he *had remembered* to carry some money with him . 要是他记得随身带钱就好了。

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . Nuclear power has the advantage of being a clean and cheap source of energy . Its disadvantage is its radiation pollution .

2 . From the title we may guess that the author is for the use of nuclear power .

Exercise 2

1 . T 2 . F 3 . F 4 . T 5 . T

Exercise 3

- 1 . intense 2 . significant 3 . analysis 4 . issues
 5 . statement 6 . debate 7 . substantial 8 . emerged
 9 . calculate 10 . objective

Exercise 4

- 1 . as it is 2 . converts .. into 3 . in turn 4 . rely on
 5 . deals with 6 . expose .. to 7 . under no circumstances
 8 . Compared with

Exercise 5

- 1 . serviced 2 . repaired 3 . confused 4 . stolen
 5 . finished 6 . heard 7 . typed 8 . cleaned
 9 . understood 10 . informed

【提示】 这个练习的目的是熟悉过去分词在复合宾语中的用法。在 see, hear, notice, watch, keep, find, get, have, feel, wish, make, like, want 等动词后面可以接一个名词或代词作宾语, 再接一个过去分词作宾语补足语, 表示宾语所承受的动作。

又如:

Have you ever heard the song *sung* in Japanese? 你听过用日语唱的这支歌吗?

How would you like your hair *cut*? 你喜欢把头发剪成什么式样?

He felt a great weight *taken off*. 他感到心中如释重负。

We all wished the problem *settled*. 我们都希望这问题得到解决。

参 考 译 文**核动力: 益处大于风险**

1. 在关于核动力安全的辩论中所阐述的各方观点, 主要来自与其有着利害关系的两个方面——一方是联合王国原子能管理局和英国核燃料股份有限公司, 另一方是各种环境保护组织。因此, 许多论点对立, 其中有些还非常耸人听闻, 而使得公众不辨真伪、无所适从也就不足为奇了。加之, 辩论各方的重要文稿都是使用了技术性极强的术语撰写, 也使得外行的读者难以理解。我们则认为, 有必要用公众能够理解的语言, 对涉及的这些问题做一个公允而又冷静地分析。

2. 一方面, 的确应该竭力尽可能加速去开发更具发展潜力的自然资源; 而同时, 我们也认为, 在下个世纪初, 任何一种自然资源对能源短缺所能做的弥补实际上都是非常微弱的。

3. 如果世界想要不去面对由于生活水平的下降而引发的内乱的风险——如果不是战争的话——这样除了依赖核能源能提供的主要贡献之外, 我们也别无良策。然而, 即使如此, 现在也确实存在很多的隐忧需要给予客观的回答。这些隐忧主要有以下几个方面:

() 核工厂的工人受到的核辐射, 以及公众有可能遭到的核辐射, 这类低度的辐射所造成的长期的后果;

()由于“泄漏”而造成原子爆炸的可能性;

()放射废料的处理问题。

4. 对于这些问题,我们逐个论述。

5. [1]可以接受的放射极限:低量辐射所造成的远期后果是难度很大的课题,原因是由于医学专家们对于现有的统计数据的解释不尽相同。然而,有两个事实的出现好像是至关重要的:没有任何证据显示在英国核工厂工作的工作人员患癌症或者其他病症的几率比全国平均水平高。公众所接触到来自于核动力的放射平均值仅仅是他们接触到来自其他能源——这里指的主要是自然能源——的非常小的部分(为0.2%)。

6. [2]可以想见的最严重的事故:必须承认,任何生产流程或是机械装置都不会是百分之百安全的。但是,在任何情况下,任何类型的热动力反应堆都不应该像原子弹那样爆炸。即使是最严重的情况,发生一些不太可能发生的状况,产生的最坏的结果就是反射线泄漏到周边的空气中。

7. 麻省理工学院的拉斯姆森教授的计算结果是,100座核电厂之中发生100人死亡事故的概率在10万年中仅有1次。

8. [3]放射废料的处理问题。经反应堆用过的燃料元素都具有很高的放射性,而且含有裂变和其他的产物,这些产物的半衰期可以从几秒一直到数万年。

9. 然而,我们应该认识到,某一种元素放射性(无论是哪一种放射)都是由该元素的放射衰变的过程而产生的。因此,衰变率高(半衰期短)的元素放射性就很强,而那些衰变率低(半衰期长)的元素放射性就处于很低的水平。

10. 经过了化学分离后,一些元素(铀和钚)便可以再循环使用;而其余的残留物则必须用某种方法储藏起来或者处理掉。目前,为了保险起见,对于放射性强的浓缩的液态废料是用不锈钢的双层储料罐来储藏的。从长期储藏的观点出发,如果这种浓缩的废料可以转变成为固态,那么其优越性就十分明显了,而现在已经发明出一种工艺,可以把这种浓缩液体转化成一种不溶解的玻璃。

11. 在地壳的一些地域,天然的放射水平已经很高,因此也像在许多情况下一样,人为活动再增加一些辐射与天然放射源相比就微不足道了。

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

1. A sports fan has killed his wife .
2. The climbers are safe and well .
3. Mr . Nixon is to appear on TV .
4. New towns are beginning to grow .
5. Will there be more oil for Japan ?
6. The Chinese population is put at 1 .13 billion .
7. Joblessness is still a problem .
8. Two men met to talk over differences .
9. Cars in the USA will be made safer for side crashes .

10 . Three people have been injured in a bomb attack .

Practice 2

A . 5 B . 6 C . 7 D . 2 E . 4 F . 3 G . 1

翻译实践

Practice 3

- 1 . 日光来自太阳,太阳是一团炽热、发光的气体。
- 2 . 电子计算机在工程技术上得到广泛应用,它使人有可能摆脱复杂的测量和计算工作。
- 3 . 机械能可以转变为电能,而电能也可以转变为机械能。
- 4 . 小型化意味着使东西尺寸变小,这对电子工业的发展十分重要。
- 5 . 他们知道饭店什么时候把吃剩的食物倒进垃圾桶,他们到那里寻找食物。

Practice 4

- 1 . 国际贸易中有一些特有的问题是在国外做生意的公司必须了解的。
- 2 . 迟到的外国商人常被拦在外面等候,好让他们知道守时的重要性。
- 3 . 除非认识到这些理应做到的举止,否则最终就可能冒犯你想与之建立贸易关系的人。
- 4 . 汇率是由进行各国货币买卖的市场确定的。
- 5 . 从 1945 年开始到 1971 年布雷顿森林体系彻底瓦解为止,国际货币基金组织一直抱有幻想,认为它可以在大部分时期保持汇率不变。

Practice 5

- 1 . China is a developing country belonging to the third world .
- 2 . English differs greatly from Spanish in pronunciation .
- 3 . He wasn 't keen on buying a car at first, but I persuaded him to do so .
- 4 . They found themselves very much in opposition to each other .
- 5 . The village had been cut off by the heavy snow for more than a month .

写作指导

Practice 6

City X is different from City Y in many ways, but there are many things that are similar .

City X is one of the most populated cities in Asia, and City Y is one of the most populated cities in North America . The weather in the summer is very hot in City X, and it is the same in City Y . City X is a port and industrial city and City Y is too . City X has a problem with pollution, and City Y has a similar problem . They both have serious traffic

problems .

Practice 7

140 Weymouth Street Charlottown
 Prince Edward Island
 Canada C1A 4Z1

15 April 2005

Chief Engineer
 Marco Engineering Co .
 600 Deepdale Drive
 Toronto, Ontario
 M5W 4R9

Dear Mr . F . Stokes ,

I graduated from Pacific Rim College in 1998 and got a B S . degree in Electrical Engineering . I am applying for the senior position in your first-class Standard Laboratory advertised in your advertisement .

Since graduation I have been working at the Electrical Engineering Laboratory of Pacific Rim College and is experienced in this field . And I believe I 'm qualified to fill the position .

Enclosed here is my resume . I can start work on Oct 1, 2005 . I am looking forward to hearing from you shortly .

Yours Sincerely ,

Alex Gavin

Alex Gavin

听 说

Part 会话实践

1 . 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

乔治 · 史密斯 : 你好 , 我能否会见副总裁陈先生。

秘书 : 您和陈先生有预约吗 ?

乔治 · 史密斯 : 有 , 是他让我今天上午来的。

秘书 : 请问您怎么称呼 ?

乔治 · 史密斯 : 乔治 · 史密斯。

秘书:史密斯先生,请您稍候片刻好吗?我去看看陈先生现在是否有空。

示例 2

董事:我不知有没有可能在本周安排一次你我之间的会谈。

助理经理:恐怕本周没法再安排了。

董事:那下周行吗?

助理经理:好的。下周二对您合适吗?

董事:可以,这个时间对我合适。

助理经理:那好。我们会谈安排在下周二上午 10 点吧。

示例 3

护士:史密斯大夫的诊所。您需要帮助吗?

患者:是的。我想和大夫预约一下。

护士:您有什么不舒服?

患者:我头疼得不得了。

护士:我尽力为您约今天下午吧。

患者:非常感谢。

护士:不用谢。

2 .

Manager: Are you free this evening ?

Employee: Yes, I suppose so. Why ?

Manager: I 'd like to have a talk with you in the office .

Employee: OK . When should I come ?

Manager: Is eight o 'clock all right ?

Employee: No problem .

3 .

Tom: Will you be free after class ?

Zhou: Yeah, I suppose so . Why ?

Tom: I 'd like to have dinner with you .

Zhou: OK . Where shall we meet ?

Tom: Just at the gate of the college . OK ?

Zhou: Sure .

4 .

Visitor: Hello . Could I talk to Mr . Chen in private ?

Secretary: Well, perhaps you have to make an appointment first .

Visitor: Is tomorrow morning all right ?

Secretary: Let me have a look at his diary .

Visitor: Is it convenient ?

Secretary: No . I 'm afraid he will be busy until noon .

5 .

1)

Visitor: Hello, I wonder if I can see Mr . Lawson, the director of your Department .

secretary: I 'm sorry . Mr . Lawson is out on business now, and I 'm afraid he won 't be back today .

Visitor: Then I'd like to make an appointment with him . Will next Monday be OK ?

secretary: A moment ,please . Let me check on his schedule . I 'm sorry again . He is engaged on next Monday .

Will next Wednesday be convenient for you ?

Visitor: Yes ,please make it Wednesday afternoon next week . My name is John Wilson .

secretary: OK . Mr . Wilson .

2)

Receptionist: Good morning ,Madam . What can I do for you ?

Mrs . White: I want to make an appointment for a permanent ,please .

Receptionist: Yes ,Madam . What time suit you ,please ?

Mrs . White: Make it tomorrow afternoon ,well ,maybe at 3 o 'clock ,OK ?

Receptionist: No problem . 3 o 'clock tomorrow afternoon . May I have your name ,please ?

Mrs . White: Mary White . Mrs . White .

Receptionist: OK . Mrs . White . We 'll be waiting for you .

Part 听力实践

A . 1) C 2) A 3) D 4) A 5) B

6) C 7) D 8) B 9) D 10) C

对话原文:

1) W: When Tom arrives in an hour ,we can go shopping .

M: Let 's finish the dishes now ,and then we can talk until he comes .

Q: What will they do first ?

2) W: Tom ?Do you think you could come into the kitchen for a second ?There 's something I 'd like you to look at .

M: Uh-uh . Just let me finish this page and I 'll be right there .

Q: What has the man been doing ?

3) M: Anna is very quiet ,but her brother talks too much .

W: Yes ,you 're right . He is not friendly ,either .

Q: What 's their opinion of Anna 's brother ?

4) M: Have you heard if Mike is coming back today ?

W: He was supposed to arrive today ,but he 's coming the day after tomorrow .

Q: When will Mike arrive ?

5) W: Stephen enjoys his two-week drive through the south of China .

M: Yes . He said he saw much more than he would have traveling by bus or by train .

Q: How did Stephen travel ?

6) W: Will Jim be able to come to the meeting ?

M: I don 't know . When I phoned just now ,his friend said he had just taken his girl friend out to the movie .

Q: What can we learn about Jim from the conversation ?

7) W: How did you go to Beijing ? Did you fly ?

M: I was planning to ,because it 's such a long trip by bus or by train . But Charles decided to drive and invited me to join him . It took two days and a night .

Q: How did the man go to Beijing ?

8) M: I can't find my pen . I need to write a letter .

W: I'll look for it later . Right now I need your help fixing this shelf before I paint it .

Q: What will they do first ?

9) M: Good morning . May I help you ?

W: Yes, I'd like to cash these traveler's checks first ,and then open a savings account .

Q: Where is this conversation most likely taking place ?

10) W: Where have you been ? It's 9 o'clock now ,and the concert started half an hour ago .

M: I'm sorry . I was caught in a traffic jam .

Q: When did the concert begin ?

B .

1 .

1) Question: Why should we make an appointment when we want to see an American friend ?

Answer: Because most American people are careful about time . And they don't like surprises .

2) Question: What should we do first in meeting with an American business colleague ?

Answer: We should talk about business first and chat later if there is time .

2 . 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) T 5) F

短文原文:

Most American people are careful about time . If they want to see a friend or meet a business colleague ,they telephone first to make an appointment . Most people don't like surprises . They want to know when a visitor is going to arrive .

If you have arranged an appointment with someone ,then it's polite to arrive a few minutes earlier . If you are late ,don't forget to say sorry . If it's impossible for you to keep the appointment ,you should call to explain the reason later on .

Please remember ,when you have an appointment with an American ,you should talk about business first and chat later-if there is time .

3 .

I'm learning how to drive a car . A week 1) ago I had my first lesson . Yesterday my teacher 2) made an appointment with me at the training 3) center and took me out on a busy 4) road . It was full of cars and people . I 5) drove very slowly and carefully ,but I felt 6) afraid the whole time . At last the lesson finished and I 7) went home . I felt very tired . I've learnt many things ,but I have 8) still got a lot to learn .

4 . 1) D 2) B 3) B

短文原文:

Should a person own a car ? This is an important question . In a large urban area ,there are some good reasons for owning a car . First ,a car allows a person to move around freely . With a car there is no need to check a bus schedule or wait for a train . Second ,a car is a comfortable way to travel ,especially in the winter time . In bad weather ,the driver stays warm and dry ,while the bus or train rider might have to stand in the rain . Finally ,a driver is usually safe in a car at night .

There are ,on the other hand ,many good reasons against owning a car . First ,it can be very expensive . The price of fuel continues to rise each year . In addition ,it is expensive to maintain and repair a car . A simple repair can cost 50 dollars . In an urban area ,it might also be expensive to park the car . Second ,owning a car can cause worry and stress . It

is exhausting to drive in heavy traffic .If you leave your car on the street ,it might get stolen . That is something also to worry about .

Questions :

- 1) Which of the following is not mentioned in the passage as a good reason for owning a car ?
- 2) According to the passage why does owning a car cause worry ?
- 3) What is the passage mainly about ?



Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Expect trouble as an inevitable part of life ...
 【译文】 把麻烦作为生活中不可避免的一部分,.....
 【注释】 as 在这里是介词,连接同位语,意思是“作为,以.....身份”。
 【例句】 Treat me *as* a friend . 把我当作朋友吧。
 He has taken up photography *as* a hobby . 他把摄影当作业余爱好。
2. 【原文】 ... when it comes, hold your head high, look it squarely in the eye and say, “ I will be bigger than you ... ”
 【译文】 当麻烦降临时,高昂起头,直面它说:“我比你更强大.....”
 【注释】 (1)短语 hold one's head high 的意思是“不要垂头丧气”。
 【例句】 A mark of true nobility is, not to *hold one's head high*, but to hear one's self humbly in a high station of life . 真正高贵的标志并不是趾高气扬,而是身居高位而谦虚谨慎。
 【注释】 (2)look sb . in the eye 的意思是“正视”。
 【例句】 He was a person of high principles, who could *look* anyone straight *in the eye* . 他是一个道德高尚的人,无论对谁都可以问心无愧。
 I promised my teacher to write to him while I was on vacation, and if I don't, I won't be able to *look* him *in the eye* . 我答应我的老师在假期中给他写信,如果我不写,我就不好意思见他。

3 .【原文】 “ This too shall pass . ”

【译文】 “ 这次也会过去的。 ”

【注释】 shall 用作助动词表示将来时用于第一人称; 当它用于各人称时表示下列意思:

(1) 许诺

【例句】 You *shall* hear everything directly you come . 你一来就会让你知道一切。

If you work hard you *shall* have a holiday on Saturday . 如果你努力工作, 星期六就可以休假。

(2) 威胁, 命令

【例句】 If you children won ' t do as I tell you, you *shall* not go to the party . 如果你们这些孩子不肯照我所说的去做, 就别想去参加晚会。

Candidates *shall* remain in their seats until all the papers are collected . 试卷收回后, 应试人方能离开座位。

(3) 决心

【例句】 That day *shall* come . 那一天一定会来到。

The enemy *shall* not pass . 不会让敌人通过的。

4 .【原文】 To forgive oneself in the face of a devastating experience is perhaps the most difficult of life ' s challenges .

【译文】 在毁灭性的经历到来之时, 原谅自己恐怕是我们一生中最难以应对的挑战了。

【注释】 短语 in the face of (sth .) 的意思是“ 面对, 在……面前 ”。

【例句】 What he could do *in the face of* all these difficulties ? 在所有这些困难面前, 他能做什么呢 ?

We are powerless *in the face of* such forces . 面对这样的势力, 我们感到无能为力。这个短语还有一个意思是“ 不顾 ”。

【例句】 He ran *in the face of* danger . 他不顾危险跑向前去。

He continued *in the face of* criticism . 纵然受到批评, 他还要继续下去。

5 .【原文】 We can stay down for the count . . .

【译文】 我们或者被击败而被驱逐下场,

【注释】 短语 for the count 来自于拳击, 指拳击者被击倒后经裁判数到 10 秒还站不起来被判失败, 作为日常用语的意思是“ 被打败, 筋疲力尽 ”。

【例句】 Little Jimmy was really out *for the count* after that long tiring day . 经过那一整天的劳累, 小吉米真的服输了(即累垮了)。

We won ' t be safe till we put them out *for the count* . 只有把他们打垮, 我们才能够平安无事。

6 .【原文】 . . . or we can pull ourselves back to our feet .

【译文】 或者我们可以鼓足勇气重新站起来。

【注释】 to one ' s feet 的意思是“ 站起来 ”。

【例句】 He sprang *to his feet* at the good news . 他听到这个好消息一跃而起。

He glanced quickly round, and rose *to his feet* . 他很快地环顾一下就站了起来。

7 . 【原文】 If we are victimized by others, we must refuse to give them the power to break our spirit, make us physically ill, perhaps even shorten our lives .

【译文】 如果有人伤害了我们,我们决不能让他们摧毁我们的精神,使我们生病,甚至缩短我们的生命。

【注释】 动词 *victimize* 的意思是“使受害,使受骗”。

【例句】 The fat boy was *victimized* by his classmates . 那个胖男孩受到了班上同学的欺侮。
Credulous people are *victimized* by quacks . 轻信的人们常常受江湖医生的骗。

8 . 【原文】 This means the sickness was triggered by an unresolved problem .

【译文】 这就意味着这些病患是由尚未解决的问题而引发的。

【注释】 动词 *trigger* 的意思是“引发”。

【例句】 The smoke *triggered* off the alarm . 烟雾引发了警报器。

Large price increases will *trigger* off demands for even larger increases . 物价大幅上涨会引发更大的涨价需求。

9 . 【原文】 I believe in blind faith .

【译文】 我相信那种看不见的信念。

【注释】 *believe in*(sb / sth .)的意思是“信赖,相信……的价值”。

【例句】 I *believe in* his good character . 我确信他品德好。

He *believe in* getting plenty of exercise . 他相信多锻炼有益处。

10 . 【原文】 Grief, in part, is self-pity turned inside out .

【译文】 从某种程度上说,悲伤是从内心发出的自怨自艾。

【注释】 *turn ... inside out* 的意思是“ (把里面)翻出来”。

【例句】 *Turn* the blouse *inside out* before drying it . 罩衫在晾晒前要把里面翻到外面。

Are you quite sure you haven't got the key on you ? *Turn* your pocket *inside out* . 你真肯定没带钥匙吗?把你的口袋翻出来看看。

11 . 【原文】 The mourner who refuses to let go of his grief eventually isolates himself from his friends .

【译文】 拒绝让悲伤过去的哀悼者逐渐地也使自己与朋友分离。

【注释】 短语 *let go of* (sb / sth .)的意思是“放开,放手”。

【例句】 Don't *let go of* the handle . 不要放开把手。

Will they *let go of* the hostages ? 他们会释放人质吗?

12 . 【原文】 The world may stop for a few hours, or perhaps a few days, to hold a hand or to wipe away a tear, ...

【译文】 这世界上的人们有可能会停顿几个小时,或者也许停顿几天用来抚慰哀悼者的痛苦,或为他们擦拭眼泪,……

【注释】 (1) *hold sb . 's hand* 的意思是“帮助或安慰”。

【例句】 It's my work he's complain about, so I'd prefer to talk to him myself — I don't need

you to *hold my hand* .他是对我的工作有意见,所以我倒愿意亲自同他谈谈——用不着你帮我的忙。

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 *wipe away* 的意思是“擦去,消除”。

【例句】 He *wiped* the sweat *away* from his brow with the back of his hand .他用手背擦去额上的汗水。

The rain then falling *wiped away* all the footprints .当时下着雨,把所有的足迹都冲掉了。

13 . 【原文】 Life goes on — and those who refuse to go on with it are left alone to wallow in their misery .

【译文】 生活还要继续——而拒绝与生活同步的人们只有被抛在后边,沉溺于他们的不幸之中了。

【注释】 *leave ... alone* 的意思是“让……一个人待着,别碰”。

【例句】 Are you going to *leave me alone* ?你准备撇下我一个人吗?

I've told you to *leave my things alone* .我已经告诉过你别动我的东西。

14 . 【原文】 I don't mean plunging into a social whirl or running off on trips .

【译文】 我并不是说要投身于频繁的社交活动中,或者不断地出行旅游。

【注释】 (1) 短语动词 *plunge into* 在这里的意思是“投入(某活动)”。

【例句】 Again, as a leader of volunteers, he *plunged into* the war against Australia .他又一次作为志愿军的首领投入了反对澳大利亚的战争。

She *plunged at once into* a description of her latest illness .她立刻开始大谈她最近患病的情况。

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 *run off* 的意思是“迅速离开,逃走”。

【例句】 “*Run off* now, I'm busy .” “快走开,我正忙着呢。”

When he heard our dog barking, the stranger *ran off* .那陌生人听到我们的狗叫就跑了。

15 . 【原文】 No matter how bad things are with you, there is someone who is worse off — and you can help him .

【译文】 不论你碰到多么糟糕的事情,也还有人比你更不幸——你还可以去帮助他。

【注释】 短语 *be worse off* 的意思是“更穷,更不幸”。

【例句】 The increase of taxes means that we'll *be* \$ 40 a month *worse off* .税款的增加意味着我们每月将减少收入 40 美元。

I've only broken my arm; other patients *are far worse off* than me .我仅仅是折断了胳膊,而其他病人的情况却比我严重得多。

16 . 【原文】 ...they drain the cup to the dregs while others sip only the bubbles on top .

【译文】他们尝尽杯中的一切,其他人只是抿到了上面的泡沫。

【注释】 短语 *drain to the dregs* 的意思是“喝干,备尝(艰苦),饱经(忧患等)”。

【例句】 He once *drained* the cup of sorrow *to the dregs*; but is now passing his time very

pleasantly . 他曾经饱经忧患,但现在过着愉快的日子。

17 . 【原文】 Perhaps no man can touch the stars unless he has known the depths of despair — and fought his way back .

【译文】 也许没有什么人能够够得到星星,除非他真正品尝过绝望的深邃——并能够奋力抗争而找到回归的路。

【注释】 短语 fight one 's way back 的意思是“(艰苦奋战)打回(原来所占据的地方)”。

【例句】 After several reverses, they *fought their way back* to their old seats on the Board . 他们几经挫折,终于返回他们原来在董事会所占的席位。

She *fought her way back* to health so quickly after the accident that she was soon back at school . 那次车祸之后,她非常迅速地恢复了健康,不久就重返学校了。

词汇精华

cope vi .

1 . 对付

【例句】 He doesn 't seem to be able to *cope* any more .

【译文】 他似乎再也没法对付了。

【例句】 Her husband 's left her and the kids are running wild, so it 's not surprising that she can 't *cope* .

【译文】 丈夫离开了她,孩子又不服管教,因此她的日子无法过下去了,这一点也不使人感到奇怪。

2 . cope with 应付,克服

【例句】 He is not able to *cope with* the difficulties of his position .

【译文】 他无法应付自己职位上的困难。

【例句】 The doctors discussed the problems that might arise in the course of the operation and ways and means to *cope with* them .

【译文】 医生们讨论了手术过程中可能产生的问题和解决这些问题的办法。

shorten v .

1 . 缩短,改短

【例句】 They want to *shorten* the time it takes to make the car .

【译文】 他们准备缩短生产该汽车的时间。

【例句】 The report is too long . Can you *shorten* it by five pages ?

【译文】 这个报告太长了,你能把它缩短 5 页吗 ?

2 . 变短

【例句】 The days begin to *shorten* in autumn .

【译文】 在秋季,白天开始变短。

generate vt .

1 . 发(电),产生(热量等)

【例句】 A dynamo is used to *generate* electricity .

【译文】 发电机用于发电。

【例句】 Steam is *generated* in a boiler .

【译文】 蒸汽是由锅炉产生的。

2 . 引起

【例句】 He tried to *generate* enthusiasm for the plan .

【译文】 他试图引起人们对那个计划的热情。

【例句】 Loud laughter was *generated* all through the crowd .

【译文】 整个人群中产生一片大笑声。

generation *n.* 产生; 一代

overcome *vt.*

1 . 克服

【例句】 He *overcame* his fear of heights .

【译文】 他克服了对高度的恐惧。

【例句】 We 'll *overcome* that difficulty when we get to it .

【译文】 碰到那种困难,我们会克服的。

2 . 使无法忍受

【例句】 Sleep *overcame* him .

【译文】 他坚持不住睡着了。

【例句】 He was *overcome* by the gas fumes .

【译文】 汽油味使他受不了。

depress *vt.*

1 . 使沮丧,使不高兴

【例句】 Wet weather always *depresses* me .

【译文】 下雨天总使我沮丧。

【例句】 Her sad news *depressed* us all day .

【译文】 她的悲惨消息使我们大家整天都不高兴。

2 . 使萧条

【例句】 The new highway *depressed* business along the old road .

【译文】 新的公路使得老路两旁的生意萧条。

【例句】 When business is *depresses*, there is usually an increase in unemployment .

【译文】 生意萧条时,通常失业率就增长。

3 . 压下,按下

【例句】 When you *depress* a key of an organ, a note is sounded .

【译文】 按下一个琴键,就会奏出一个音来。

【例句】 Which button do I *depress* to turn the radio on ?

【译文】 我按哪个按钮才能打开收音机 ?

depression *n.* 沮丧; 萧条

manage *v.*

1 . 经营,管理

【例句】 The prime minister really *manages* the government .

【译文】 首相实际上管理政府。

【例句】 He *manages* a large business for his mother .

【译文】 他替他母亲经营一家公司。

2 . 看管,驾驭

【例句】 Can you *manage* children well ?

【译文】 你能看好小孩吗 ?

【例句】 He is good at *managing* his money .

【译文】 他善于管理自己的资金。

3. 设法完成(多接不定式)

【例句】 We *managed* to get what we wanted, anyhow .

【译文】 不管怎样,我们设法得到了我们想要的东西。

【例句】 I just about *managed* to get up the stairs .

【译文】 我几乎能上楼了。

4. 能办到,设法解决(常与 can 连用)

【例句】 I think we can *manage* that somehow .

【译文】 我认为我们可以想法解决。

【例句】 It 's heavy, but I can *manage* .

【译文】 它很重,但是我可以搬得动。

management *n.* 管理,经营;管理机构

manager *n.* 经理

sacrifice *vi.*

1. 牺牲

【例句】 The car 's designers have *sacrificed* comfort to economy .

【译文】 汽车设计师们为了经济的缘故而不考虑它是否舒适。

【例句】 A mother will *sacrifice* her life for her children .

【译文】 一个母亲可以为了孩子牺牲自己的生命。

2. 供奉,祭祀

【例句】 The ancient Greeks *sacrificed* lambs or calves before engaging in battle .

【译文】 古希腊人在投入战斗之前用牛犊或羊羔祭祀。

【例句】 In some countries animals are *sacrificed* to a god .

【译文】 有些国家用动物供奉神。

sacrifice *n.* 牺牲

练习答案

Exercise 1

(open)

Exercise 2

1. The author 's attitude toward the trouble: Expect trouble as an inevitable part of life and, when it comes, hold your head high, look it squarely in the eye and say, " I will be bigger than you . You cannot defeat me . "

2. The most difficult of life 's challenges: To forgive oneself in the face of a devastating experience .

3. Something that can make you sicker than a virus: Stressful feelings such as worry, anxiety, tension and anger .

4. The implication of " nervous breakdown ": Nerves have broken down, but originally the nerves are healthy . The problem is purely emotional .

5. The healer that can overcome grief: Time .

- 6 . The reasons why some people feel isolated or lonely: Refusing to let go of their grief and to go on with life .
- 7 . The best prescription for a broken heart: Activity .
- 8 . The author 's comment on those who suffer deeply : Those who suffer deeply touch life at every point; they drain the cup to the dregs .

Exercise 3

- 1 . F 2 . F 3 . F 4 . T 5 . T

Exercise 4

- 1 . O 2 . O 3 . F 4 . F 5 . O 6 . O 7 . O 8 . O

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 . 1) <i>n</i> . | 2) <i>v</i> . | 3) <i>v</i> . | 4) <i>v</i> . |
| 2 . 1) | 2) | 3) | 4) |
| 3 . 1) <i>adj</i> . | 2) <i>adj</i> . | 3) <i>adj</i> . | 4) <i>adv</i> . |
| 4 . 1) <i>v</i> . | 2) <i>v</i> . | 3) <i>v</i> . | 4) <i>n</i> . |

Exercise 6

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 . cope | 2 . challenge | 3 . positive | 4 . crisis |
| 5 . shortened | 6 . depressed | 7 . overcome | 8 . generated |
| 9 . dimension | 10 . precious | | |

Exercise 7

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 . look . . into the eye | 2 . was worse off |
| 3 . in the face of | 4 . are isolated from |
| 5 . to their feet | 6 . your heads held high |
| 7 . in part | 8 . turned inside out |
| 9 . broke down | 10 . let go of |

Exercise 8

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 . A | 2 . B | 3 . C | 4 . B | 5 . C |
| 6 . A | 7 . B | 8 . D | 9 . C | 10 . A |
| 11 . A | 12 . C | 13 . B | 14 . D | 15 . C |
| 16 . D | 17 . B | 18 . A | 19 . B | 20 . D |

Exercise 9

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1 . play | 2 . wear | 3 . finish | 4 . take |
| 5 . behave | 6 . go | 7 . stay | 8 . explode |

Exercise 10

- 1 . They will not get there on time without taking a taxi .

2. Did anyone inform you of the change of the plans?
3. Despite the city's many attractions, Johnny still preferred his life in the country.
4. But for his sister's money, Harry would never be a doctor.
5. The man with a red beard is talking to Henry's Father.
6. In spite of the clear scientific evidence, people still refused to believe that cigarette smoking was dangerous.

参 考 译 文

应对危机

1. 如果有人让我提出一个对整个人类来说最有用的一条忠告,那这个忠告就是:把麻烦作为生活中不可避免的一部分,当麻烦降临时,高昂起头,直面它说:“我比你更强大,你不可能击败我。”然后对你自己重复那些最能感受到安慰的话语:“这次也会过去的。”

2. 在毁灭性的经历到来之时,原谅自己恐怕是我们一生中最难以应对的挑战了。大多数人会觉得去原谅他人更容易些。

3. 在很多情况下,我们无法控制发生在我们身上的事情,但我们却可以控制自己对所发生的状况的反应。我们或者被击败而被驱逐下场,或者我们可以鼓足勇气重新站起来。如果有人伤害了我们,我们决不能让他们摧毁我们的精神,使我们生病,甚至缩短我们的生命。多数的医生都会告诉我们,忧愁、焦虑、紧张和气愤比病毒更会使我们发病。

4. “神经崩溃”这个词指的就是神经系统的崩溃,但是从器官上来说神经是健康的。问题完全出在情绪上。在梅奥诊所工作的一位医生曾经说,在他们医院里住院的病人中,大多数的疾病都是由于心理因素造成的。这就意味着这些病患是由尚未解决的问题而引发的。

5. 我相信那种看不见的信念。我认识一些遭受个人悲剧困扰的人,这种信念给予了他们帮助。但我同样也相信积极的行为可以战胜悲伤的功效。时间是一剂良药,而那些能够聪明地利用时间的人们就可以更迅捷地得以调整。

6. 从某种程度上说,悲伤是从内心发出的自怨自艾。一位寡妇哭诉道:“他就是我的一切。没了他我可怎么活呀?”而这实际是在为她自己哭,并不是为他在哭泣。拒绝让悲伤过去的哀悼者逐渐地也使自己与朋友分离。这世界上的人们有可能会停顿几个小时,或者也许停顿几天用来抚慰哀悼者的痛苦,或为他们擦拭眼泪,但是朋友们和亲戚们也都有他们自己的事情。生活还要继续——而拒绝与生活同步的人们只有被抛在后边,沉溺于他们的不幸之中了。

7. 治愈心碎的良方莫过于去活动了。我并不是说要投身于频繁的社交活动中,或者不断地出行旅游。太多的人试图用这种办法来逃避痛苦,而事实上只是带着他们的麻烦到处跑。最行之有效的活动是要去做些能够帮助他人的事情。我曾告诉成千上万陷于悲痛之中的人们:“痛哭流涕现在可以告一段落了。不论你碰到多么糟糕的事情,也还有人比你更不幸——你还可以去帮助他。”

8. 最令我有所感触的就是这个世界普通人身上存在的英雄主义、勇气和信念。通常读者写到他们的问题时,会掺杂一些他们个人生活上的事情。一些情操高尚的人写下这样的语句使我深深感动,“在我们结婚后不久,我先生就双目失明了,而我们的生活却处理得十分美好。”或者,“我已经经历了两次医治癌症的手术,但我知道我可以去参加6月份儿子的毕业典礼,我深感欣慰。”

9. 没有人知道生活为什么会这样惩罚上帝创造的完美人物。也许真的是任何东西都有其价值,我们必须牺牲某样东西才可以换取另一样。诗人和哲学家说过,厄运、忧伤和痛苦使我们的生活更具多样化。那些身受困苦的人触及

了生活的每一个侧面;他们尝尽杯中的一切,其他人只是抵到了上面的泡沫。也许没有什么人能够够得到星星,除非他真正品尝过绝望的深邃——并能够奋力抗争而找到回归的路。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Millions of Britons Endure Life with Noisy Neighbours .
 【译文】 数百万的不列颠人忍受着邻居吵闹的生活。
 【注释】 动词 endure 的意思是“ 忍受, 容忍 ”。
 【例句】 The Indians *endured* much pain . 这些印地安人忍受了很多痛苦。
 I can't *endure* his rudeness . 我不能容忍他的粗鲁。
2. 【原文】 ... but environmental health officers have a battery of legislation at their disposal .
 【译文】但是环境卫生官员们却制定了一系列他们可以采用的法规。
 【注释】 短语 at sb . 's disposal 的意思是“ 由某人支配, 由某人处理 ”。
 【例句】 Students have a well-stocked library *at their disposal* . 有一个藏书很多的图书馆可供学生使用。
 The firm put a secretary *at my disposal* . 公司给我配备了一名秘书。
3. 【原文】 Booming music, banging doors and chatter from the house next door, and traffic noise are blighting lives of up to 18 million people according to a survey published today .
 【译文】 今天公布的一项调查显示, 有多达 1 800 万人的生活受到轰鸣的音乐、砰砰的砸门声、邻居家的高谈阔论声以及交通噪音的纷扰。
 【注释】 (1) 动词 bang 的意思是“ 用力猛击, 砰地作响 ”。
 【例句】 I *banged* the box down on the floor . 我砰地一声把盒子摔在地上了。
 A door was *banging* somewhere . 不知什么地方有一扇门砰地作响。
 【注释】 (2) 复合介词 up to 的意思是“ 多达, 直到 ”。
 【例句】 I can take *up to* four people in my car . 我能用我的车带 4 个人。
 He has read *up to* chapter ten . 他已经看到了第十章。
4. 【原文】 Environmental researchers found that nearly a third of Britons claim their home life is being spoiled by noise from neighbours, road traffic, aircraft and train .
 【译文】 环境调查员们发现有近三分之一的不列颠人投诉, 他们的家庭生活受到来自邻居、交通、飞机和火车的干扰。
 【注释】 动词 spoil 的意思是“ 损害, 破坏 ”。
 【例句】 The new road has completely *spoiled* the character of the village . 这条新建公路把这村子的特色全毁了。
 The holiday was *spoilt* by bad weather . 坏天气把假日破坏了。

这个动词还有一个意思是“宠坏,溺爱”。

【例句】 The little girl is terribly *spoilt* — her parents give her everything she asks for . 那个小女孩被宠坏了——她要什么父母就给什么。

They are *spoiled* by bad education . 不良的教育把他们惯坏了。

5 . 【原文】 ... the levels of noise pollution are rising, particularly from “ amplified music, noisy animals and people ’s voices . ”

【译文】噪音污染正日益严重,尤其是“用扬声器播放的音乐、吵吵闹闹的动物和人声”的污染。

【注释】 动词 *amplify* 的意思是“放大,扩大”。

【例句】 The vacuum-tubes in a radio-set *amplify* the variation in the current . 收音机里的电子管把电流的变化加以放大。

People *amplify* sound with the use of electronic equipment . 人们用电子设备将声音放大。

6 . 【原文】 The study, ... , questioned 2,373 adults from randomly selected households in 1991 .

【译文】 研究报告.....曾于1991年随机向2373名家庭中的成年人进行了问卷调查。

【注释】 在这里的 *question* 是动词,意思是“询问”。

【例句】 I ’d like to *question* you on your views about the housing problem . 我想问问你对住房问题的意见。

They *questioned* her closely about her friendship with the dead man . 他们仔细询问她和死者的交情。

7 . 【原文】 A small number approach neighbours directly and some consider direct and violent measures .

【译文】 只有一小部分人会直接去找邻居交涉,其中有一些还考虑采用直接和强硬手段。

【注释】 动词 *approach* 的意思是“接近”。

【例句】 There was only one person whom I could possibly *approach* . 我能找的人只有一个。

Few writers even begin to *approach* Shakespeare ’s greatness . 很少作家比得上莎士比亚的伟大。

这个动词还有一个意思是“接近(某个地方或时间)”。

【例句】 As you *approach* the town the first building you see is the church . 你走近镇子时,看到的第一幢建筑就是教堂。

The time is *approaching* when we must think about buying a new house . 快到买一所新房子的时候了。

8 . 【原文】 Only 16 per cent will contact a council ’s environmental health officer, who may have powers to end the misery .

【译文】 仅有16%的人会与委员会的环境卫生官员联系,这些官员也许拥有权力结束这种苦难。

【注释】 动词 *contact* 的意思是“和.....联系”。

【例句】 Where can I *contact* you tomorrow ? 明天我在哪儿和你联系 ?

I shall *contact* you by telephone on Friday . 我将在星期五用电话和你联系。

要注意, *contact* 作动词时是及物动词, 后面不接介词, 不要与短语 *in contact with* 混淆, 在这个短语中 *contact* 是名词, 后面接介词 *with*。

【例句】 The two substances are now *in contact with* each other . 现在这两种物质相互接触。

Have you been *in contact with* your sister recently ? 你最近和你姐姐有联系吗 ?

9 . 【原文】 ... 22 per cent objected to noise from neighbours, ...

【译文】 有 22% 的人抗议来自于邻居的噪音,

【注释】 动词 *object* 的意思是“ 反对 ”, 和介词 *to* 连用。

【例句】 I *object to* all this noise . 我反对所有这种噪音。

He *objects to* being treated like a child . 他反对把他当小孩对待。

10 . 【原文】 Mr . Grimwood said people reacted to noise, particularly from neighbours, in a variety of ways .

【译文】 格里姆伍德先生说到, 人们对付噪音的方式, 尤其是对付来自于邻居噪音的方式是多种多样的。

【注释】 *react to* 的意思是“ 对..... 做出反应 ”。

【例句】 People *react positively to* the suggestion . 人们对这个建议做出积极反应。

How is your patient *reacting to* the course of treatment ? 你的病人对这个疗程反应如何 ?

11 . 【原文】 Many of those questioned said telephone conversations, reading and sleeping were disrupted by noises from next door .

【译文】 被询问的许多人都说, 他们的交谈、看书和睡眠被邻居发出的噪音打断了。

【注释】 动词 *disrupt* 的意思是“ 扰乱, 使中断 ”。

【例句】 Fog *disrupted* traffic . 大雾使交通混乱。

The special TV report *disrupted* regular programming . 电视特别报导中断了正常节目安排。

12 . 【原文】 ... while heavy traffic and emotionally charged or frightening noises such as arguments or children crying triggered stressful or violent moods .

【译文】 而嘈杂的交通噪音、情绪激动的指责声或使人惊恐的声音, 如争吵或孩子的哭闹都会引起惊恐和狂躁的情绪。

【注释】 动词 *charge* 在这里的意思是“ 使充满(感情) ”, 与介词 *with* 连用。

【例句】 The atmosphere was *charged with* excitement . 气氛极为兴奋热烈。

His voice was *charged with* tension . 他声音里充满了紧张不安。

13 . 【原文】 He said action could be taken under the Environmental Protection Act 1990 and laws that came into force in January covering nuisance noise on streets .

【译文】 他说, 人们可以根据 1990 年的环境保护条例和 1 月份已颁布实施的有关街道上令人生厌的噪音的法规来做出行动。

【注释】 (1)介词 *under* 在这里的意思是“根据(协议、法律或制度的条款)”。

【例句】 *Under* the terms of the lease you had no right to sublet the property . 根据租约的条款, 你没有权利转租房地产。

Six suspects are being held *under* the Prevention of Terrorism Act . 根据防范恐怖主义的条例, 6 名嫌疑犯被拘留。

【注释】 (2)短语 *come into force* 的意思是“(法律、规章制度)生效”。

【例句】 When do the new safety rules *come into force* ? 这些新的安全规则什么时候生效?

The new constitution *came into force* July 1, 1867 . 这部新宪法于 1867 年 7 月 1 日生效。

14 . 【原文】 Mr . Price said people could cause a noise problem not because they were unreasonable but because the building in which they lived had poor sound insulation .

【译文】 普莱斯先生说, 人们有可能引发噪音的原因并不是不讲道理, 而是由于他们居住的房屋隔音条件太差。

【注释】 *not ... but* 的意思是“不是……而是”。

【例句】 Shakespeare is *not* a musician, *but* a writer . 莎士比亚不是音乐家, 而是作家。

It was *not* greed *but* ambition that drove him to crime . 不是贪心而是野心促使他犯罪。

语法告诉你

并列句

并列句由两个或更多两个互不依从的主谓结构组成。并列句用下列连词或副词连接。

1 . 连词 *and* 表示并列关系, 译成汉语时常可省略, 例如:

I said it *and* I mean it . 我说话算数。

I went *and* he went too . 我去了, 他也去了。

有时表示“然后, 随后”, 例如:

She came in *and* sat down . 她走了进来, 随后就坐下了。

I pulled the trigger *and* the gun went off . 我扣动扳机, 枪随即响了。

如果第一部分是祈使句, 则整个句子的意思是“只要……就; 如果……就”, 例如:

Work hard *and* you will pass your examination . 如果你努力学习, 就会考及格。

Arrive late once more *and* you 're fired . 如果你再迟到一次, 就解雇你。

2 . 连词 *or* 用来表示选择关系, 意思是“不然, 否则”, 例如:

Now I must go *or* I shall be late for the meeting . 现在我得走了, 否则开会就要迟到了。

You must go to work *or* you 'll lose your job . 你得去上班, 否则你将失业。

有时第一部分使用一个祈使句, 例如:

Have a care what you say *or* you may regret it . 你说话要当心, 否则你会后悔的。

Don't drive so fast *or* you'll have an accident . 别开那么快, 不然你会出车祸。

3 . 连词 *but* 及 *yet* 用来表示转折关系, 意思是“ 然而, 但是 ”, 例如:

Tom went to the party, *but* his brother didn't . 汤姆去参加聚会了, 但他的兄弟没去。

Honey is sweet, *but* the bee stings . 蜂蜜是甜的, 但是蜜蜂却蜇人。(谚语)

She trained hard all year *yet* still failed to reach her best form . 她整年刻苦训练, 却未能达到最佳竞技状态。

Nobody has ever called Balzac a statesman, *yet* he was probably the greatest statesman of our time . 从来没有人把巴尔扎克称为政治家, 然而他很可能是当代最伟大的政治家。

转折关系还可以用副词 *nevertheless* 及 *however* 来表示, 例如:

She is very intelligent, *nevertheless* she is quite modest . 她非常聪慧, 但仍然十分谦虚。

I'll offer it to Tom, *however* he may not want it . 我将把它送给汤姆, 不过他可能不要。

4 . 连词 *for* 表示因果关系, 意思是“ 因为 ”, 但是它并不表示原因, 而只是对前文的一种解释, 例如:

It looks like rain, *for* it's getting dark . 看样子要下雨了, 因为天渐渐暗下来了。(天色变暗是对可能下雨这一判断的解释, 而不是下雨的原因)

We listened eagerly, *for* he brought news of our families . 我们如饥似渴地听着, 因为他带来了我们家里的消息。

The days were short, *for* it was now December . 白天很短, 因为当时已是 12 月了。

副词 *so*, *therefore* 和 *hence* 也可以表示因果关系, 意思是“ 因此, 所以 ”, 例如:

These glasses are very expensive, *so* please be careful with them . 这些玻璃杯非常昂贵, 所以请小心。

The manager was ill *so* I went in his place . 经理生病了, 所以我替他去。

It rained; *therefore* the game was called off . 天下雨了, 因此球赛取消了。

Louise went to a party, *therefore* she did not study her lessons . 路易丝参加聚会了, 因此没有复习功课。

My mother is by herself; *hence* I must go home now . 我妈一个人在家, 因此我得回去了。

He has neither ear nor voice, *hence* he cannot sing . 他耳朵不好, 又没有好嗓子, 所以不能唱歌。

5 . 复合连词 *either ... or* 表示选择, 意思是“ 或者……或者 ”, 例如:

Either you cut it out *or* we should have to wash our hands of the whole business . 或者你住手, 或者我们就不得不对整个事情绝不过问了。

Either do it at once *or* don't do it at all . 或是马上就做, 或是干脆不做。

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . Over 85 decibels .

2 . (open)

3 . (open)

Exercise 2

1 . A 2 . D 3 . C 4 . B 5 . C

Exercise 3

1 . considerate 2 . complaints 3 . approach 4 . findings
5 . desire 6 . violent 7 . has spoilt 8 . endured
9 . harm 10 . mood

Exercise 4

1 . depends on 2 . come into force 3 . objected to 4 . focus on
5 . react to 6 . suffering from 7 . has been carried out
8 . up to 9 . a variety of 10 . tends to

Exercise 5

- 1 . The children can go with us or (they can) stay at home .
- 2 . This sentence may be correct grammatically, but a native speaker never says it that way .
- 3 . The girl decided to remain at home, for it was raining hard .
- 4 . Fewer blacks are leaving the rural South these days, not because farming has become more popular but because industry is moving in .
- 5 . Brian locked the door and went to a nearby pub .
- 6 . They could not decide what to do, so/ and they asked my advice .
- 7 . Mr . Fisher neither loves the environment nor is accustomed to the weather .
- 8 . For the first time I saw my father not as the giant of my childhood but simply as a lonely man .

参考译文

数百万的不列颠人忍受着邻居吵闹的生活

许多人认为他们不具备做出行动的权利，
但是环境卫生官员们却制定了一系列他们可以采用的法规。

1 . 现今公布的一项调查显示,有多达 1 800 万人的生活受到轰鸣的音乐、砰砰的砸门声、邻居家的高谈阔论声以及交通噪音的纷扰。

2 . 环境调查员们发现有近三分之一的不列颠人投诉,他们的家庭生活受到来自邻居、交通、飞机和火车的干扰。他们的发现显示出噪音污染正日益严重,尤其是“用扬声器播放的音乐、吵吵闹闹的动物和人声”的污染。

3 . 一份即将提交到国家学会参加在伯明翰召开的清洁空气和环境保护研讨会的研究报告中,曾于 1991 年随机

向 2 373 名家庭中的成年人进行了问卷调查。调查显示政府有关噪音投诉的统计数字大大低估了噪音可以给人民生活和健康造成的危害。

4. 环境部建筑研究机构的调查员科林·格里姆伍德曾说,在忍受着来自邻居的噪音干扰的人群中有 60% ~ 70% 的人从未抱怨过。只有一小部分人会直接去找邻居交涉,其中有一些还考虑采用直接和强硬手段。仅有 16% 的人会与委员会的环境卫生官员联系,这些官员也许拥有权力结束这种苦难。

5. 这项调查发现在被询问的人中有 30% 抱怨他们受到交通噪音的有害影响,有 22% 的人抗议来自于邻居的噪音,16% 的人遭受到飞机噪音的干扰,还有 4% 受到火车的噪音干扰。

6. 20 世纪 80 年代晚期还进行过一项类似的调查,调查中发现有 11% 的人受到交通噪音的影响,14% 的人受到邻居噪音的影响。

7. 格里姆伍德先生说到,人们对付噪音的方式,尤其是对付来自于邻居噪音的方式是多种多样的,包括恼怒、气愤、试图搬家、倦怠和沮丧。

8. 被询问的许多人都说,他们的交谈、看书和睡眠被邻居发出的噪音打断了。

9. 人们反映最多的是从隔壁邻居那里传来的说话声。在被调查的人中有 10% 说他们可以听到别人说话,半数以上的人对此很反感。

10. 格里姆伍德先生还说,噪音所产生的影响取决于噪音的大小、噪音持续时间的长短以及是何类别的噪音。例如,通常人们说邻居发出的笑声是令人感到愉悦的,而嘈杂的交通噪音、情绪激动的指责声或使人惊恐的声音,如争吵或孩子的哭闹都会引起惊恐和狂躁的情绪。

11. 不可预见的、出人意料的或者是不熟悉的声音也会引起不友善的或者是苦恼的反应。这些声音包括警报声、无法估计竣工期的建筑施工、突然发动引擎和狐狸的呼号声。

12. 环境卫生官员协会的霍华德·普莱斯称许多人误认为自己没有权利作为。

13. 他说,人们可以根据 1990 年的环境保护条例和 1 月份已颁布实施的有关街道上令人生厌的噪音的法规来做出行动。

14. 普莱斯先生说,人们有可能引发噪音的原因并不是不讲道理,而是由于他们居住的房屋隔音条件太差。

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

. The News Summary

Who: U S . Marines

What: Rescue 59 Americans

When: Sunday

Where: the Liberian capital of Monrovia

Why: Protect them from imminent danger in that wartorn nation

How: Helicopters from ships offshore

. Information in Detail

- 1 . Were there any injuries in the operation ? (No.)
- 2 . Did the operation turn out to be successful ? (Yes.)
- 3 . How many U .S . citizens still remain there ? (About 311 .)
- 4 . What happened in the Liberian capital of Monrovia ? (The civil war .)
- 5 . Was there any resistance in the operation ? (No.)

Practice 2

Summary

- 1 . Who: Michael Jackson (a pop star)
- 2 . What: Held a computer discussion with his fans
- 3 . When: Thursday night
- 4 . Where: New York
- 5 . Why: Answered questions about his marriage, music and the media
- 6 . How: On-line (discussion)

Details

- 1 . He was going to divorce Lisa Marie Presley, daughter of Elvis
- 2 . He reacted by writing “ Never believe that tabloid garbage . ”
- 3 . Thousands of fans took part in the discussion .
- 4 . The fans mainly wanted to know about Jackson 's personal life .
- 5 . He did not answer all the questions, and he chose the ones he wanted to answer .
- 6 . The conversation between them passed on the Internet computer network .

翻译实践

Practice 3

- 1 . 船通常在什么时候到达 ?
- 2 . 展览会上没有什么使他感兴趣的东西。
- 3 . 科学在我们生活的社会里起着重要的作用。
- 4 . 金属的强度、硬度和可塑性是使其广泛用于工业上的特性。
- 5 . 好钟的钟摆可以自动补偿温度变化造成的影响。

Practice 4

- 1 . 我们或者被击败而被驱逐下场,或者我们可以鼓足勇气重新站起来。
- 2 . 时间是一剂良药,而那些能够聪明地利用时间的人们就可以更迅捷地得以调整。

3. 生活还要继续——而拒绝与生活同步的人们只有被抛在后边,沉溺于他们的不幸之中了。
4. 痛哭流涕现在可以告一段落了。不论你碰到多么糟糕的事情,也还有人比你更不幸——你还可以去帮助他。”
5. 一份即将提交到国家学会参加在伯明翰召开的清洁空气和环境保护研讨会的研究报告中,曾于 2003 年随机向 2 373 名家庭中的成年人进行了问卷调查。

Practice 5

1. Most of us find it necessary to react to his speech .
2. We should never isolate ourselves from the masses .
3. He has passed the national CET-4 not because he has a good luck but because he has been working hard .
4. I 've had two operations for cancer ,but I know I 'll be able to attend my son 's graduation in June and I 'm thankful for that .
5. Action could be taken under the Environmental Protection Act 1990 and law that came into force in January .

写作指导

Practice 6

The recorded music on sale falls into three categories . The first category is classical music ,which is traditional and formal .Being hard to follow ,it is mainly enjoyed by educated people . The second category is easy listening music ,also known as light music . This kind of music is structurally simple and pleasing . The melody is beautiful and easy to understand ,and therefore is liked by most people . The last category is dancing music ,which is popular for dancing parties . The music is lively ,energetic ,and favored by the youth .

Practice 7

Dear Sir ,

I am pleased to learn that my application for admission to graduate study at your University has been approved . I would like to know about the kinds of scholarships your university awards . I would be obliged if you let me have details of any scholarships offered to students from other countries .

I look forward to hearing from you soon .

Sincerely yours,
Wang Dong

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

王: 布莱克先生, 恐怕我们的约会得改个时间。

布莱克先生: 出什么问题了?

王: 下午我有个紧急会议。我们把约会推迟些, 您不会介意吧?

布莱克先生: 不会, 没有什么。

王: 那么也许我们定在下周吧。

布莱克先生: 好吧。

示例 2

面试考官: 我们推迟面试, 你介意吗?

被面试者: 不, 没有什么。

面试考官: 那么也许定在下周。

被面试者: 好。

面试考官: 给你造成的不便我们表示歉意。

被面试者: 没关系。

示例 3

李小姐: 史密斯先生, 打搅一下。

史密斯先生: 嗨, 李小姐。出了什么事情吗?

李小姐: 我们可以把约会时间改到明天下午吗?

史密斯先生: 不行。那个时间恐怕我会很忙。

李小姐: 那么, 星期三您可以安排吗?

史密斯先生: 可以。星期三下午在我办公室。

2.

Lu: Mr . Smith, I 'm terribly sorry, but something unexpected has come up .

Mr . Smith: Do you mean you can 't keep our appointment this evening ?

Lu: I hope you understand .

Mr . Smith: It doesn 't matter . We may meet some other time .

3.

Christ: Well, is it all right if we change the time of our appointment?

Kong: Do you mean our appointment for tomorrow ?

Christ: Yes . I wonder if we could make it the day after tomorrow .

Kong: No problem .

Christ: I 'm extremely sorry for the trouble .

Kong: That 's all right .

4.

Visitor: Could I see Mr . Chen?

Receptionist: I 'm afraid Mr . Chen is occupied at the moment . Would you mind waiting?

Visitor: Well, how long will it be?

Receptionist: About an hour .

Visitor: Oh, that 's too long .

Receptionist: Would you like to make an appointment for some other time?

Visitor: No, thank you .

5 .

1)

Chen: Hi, Bill . I 'm afraid I won 't be available tomorrow morning for our appointment .

Bill: That 's all right .

Chen: Shall we change it to the afternoon ?

Bill: No problem . When ?

Chen: Will 2:00 be OK for you ?

Bill: Yes . I 'll be there at 2:00 .

Chen: Sorry for the inconvenience it may cause you .

Bill: That 's all right .

2)

Tom: Hi, Guo . I 'm afraid we have to change our appointment for the weekend .

Guo: Why ? What 's wrong ?

Tom: I won 't be available this weekend . Perhaps we could make it next week .

Guo: OK . No problem with me .

Tom: Thank you for your understanding .

Guo: Don 't mention it .

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) B 2) C 3) A 4) B 5) D
 6) C 7) A 8) D 9) D 10) C

对话原文:

1) M: Does John want to buy a new car ?

W: I don 't think he can afford one right now . He 's buying a new house .

Q: What does the woman mean ?

2) W: Aren 't you tired of learning English ?

M: Far from it . I 'm enjoying it now more than ever .

Q: What can we learn about the man from the conversation ?

3) M: We 'd like a table for two by the window please .

W: That 'll be an extra ten-minute wait, I 'm afraid .

Q: Where does this conversation most probably take place ?

4) M: Why is Tony looking upset ?

W: I had him clean up his room instead of going out .

Q: Why is Tony looking upset ?

5) W: Does your mother wash your shirts ?

M: Come on, Mary . You know me better than that . I have the cleaners do them .

Q: Who washes the man 's shirts ?

6) W: How do you like your new job ?

M: I like it, but I 'm having a hard time getting used to the long hours .

Q: What is the man 's problem ?

7) M: I can't find my keys . They were in my bag and now they've gone . Have you seen them ?

W: I haven't seen them here ,but you may have dropped them in your car .

Q: What does the woman mean ?

8) M: It's no use ,Mary . The people next door to us are making so much noise that I can't read this book .

W: Why didn't you stay at the library ,Tom ?It's much quieter there .

Q: What does Mary imply ?

9) W: Sorry to have kept you waiting ,Tom . But my car broke down on the way .

M: That's too bad . It's nearly the end of the game now ,I'm afraid .

Q: What can we learn from the conversation ?

10) M: I've got something to discuss with you before I go home . Do you think it would be possible for us to meet again this morning ?

W: Yes ,I think so . I'll be away from 10 to 12 this morning . Should we meet before that ?

Q: When will it be possible for the two people to meet again this morning ?

B .

1 .

1) Question: Who phoned Mr . Bates ?

Answers: The nurse of the dentistry.

2) Question: For what purpose did Mr . Bates make the appointment with the dentist ?

Answers: He wanted the dentist to value his gold tooth.

2 . 1) Mr . Bates 2) two 3) nurse 4) pain-killers 5) was not 6) gold

短文原文:

(The telephone rang and Mr . Bates picked it up .)

" Good morning ,Mr . Bates . This is Anderson's Dentistry . I'm sorry to tell you that the dentist is ill . I'm afraid your appointment with him has to be postponed . I have to arrange for you to see the dentist two days later . I'm sorry for the delay . If your teeth hurt you badly ,I can give you some pain-killers now ."

" Oh ,don't worry , " said Mr . Bates , " My teeth are all right . I only wanted the doctor to have a look at my gold tooth ,and see how much it is worth ."

3 .

Mr . Johnson looked at his watch . It was half past 1) seven . He got out of bed quickly . 2) Then he washed and dressed . He was late as 3) usual ,so he did not have time for 4) breakfast . He ran all the way to the station and he 5) arrived there just in time for the train . Mr . Johnson 6) never eats anything in the morning . He always says to his friends at the 7) office: " It's nice to have breakfast in the morning ,but it's nicer to 8) lie in bed ."

4 . 1) D 2) C 3) A

短文原文:

One hundred and fifty years ago ,the position of women in U .S . society was very different from their position today . At that time women were completely subordinate to men . Society did not encourage women to have a career outside the home . Although they received an education at elementary school and high school ,they were not allowed to attend college or university . Even when a married woman did work outside the home ,she could not keep the money that she earned . The law required her to give the money to her husband ! Society expected women to do the housekeeping ,to raise the children ,and to obey their husbands . That was their role in society . They did not have the right to vote . In many ways ,they were almost like slaves .

This situation began to change slowly after 1848 .Small groups of women began to protest the lack of equality and justice in U .S . society . For many years, their attempts to improve women 's position ended in failure . Slowly, however ,more and more people began to share their ideas and support their demand until ,in 1920 ,women were given the right to vote in national election .

Questions :

- 1) What was true of American women 150 years ago ?
- 2) When did women in American have the right to vote in a national election ?
- 3) What is the main topic of the passage ?


Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 There has been much debate for a number of years about how far scientists should be responsible to society for the results of their work .

【译文】 许多年来,关于科学家因其研究成果应该对社会负多少责任的问题始终争论不休。

【注释】 be responsible to (sb .) for (sth .) 的意思是“为某事向某人负责”。

【例句】 Who *is responsible to* the parents *for* the education of children ? 谁为孩子的教育向家长负责 ?

The Minister of Finance *is responsible to* the President *for* the finance of the nation . 财政部长为国家的财政向总统负责。

2. 【原文】 This question applies particularly to university scientists as they are the ones who are free to choose their field of research .

【译文】 这个问题尤其适用于大学里的科学家们,因为他们可以自由地选择研究的领域。

【注释】 be free (to do) 的意思是“可以随意(做某事)”。

【例句】 You are *free to* come and go as you please . 你可以随意来去。

Shelley was *free to* pursue his own life in his own way . 雪莱可以随意以自己的方式追求自己的生活。

3. 【原文】 ... in their case, the responsibility lies mainly with the authorities that employ them; ...

【译文】在这种情况下,社会责任主要是由聘用他们的机构承担;.....

【注释】 lie with (sb.)的意思是“是.....的职责”。

【例句】 The decision on whether to proceed *lies with* the minister. 决定是否继续进行要由部长裁定。

It *lies with* you to accept or reject the proposal. 对那建议接受与否由你决定。

4. 【原文】 ... they are not entirely free agents, short of resigning from their post.

【译文】他们个人完全没有选择的余地,除非他们辞去职位。

【注释】 short of (sth.)的意思是“除.....外,除非”。

【例句】 *Short of* what is dishonorable, I will do anything to help you. 除了不光彩的事外,我可以帮你做任何事情。

Short of miracle, we're certain to lose now. 除非有奇迹发生,我们现在确定要输了。这个短语还有一个意思是“缺乏,不足”。

【例句】 The city is *short of* water at this time of year. 该市每年这个时候缺水。

The hospital is *short of* advanced equipment. 那家医院缺乏先进设备。

5. 【原文】 In 1979 charges were brought against the University of California claiming that agricultural research which it promoted had led to increased automation and consequently farm workers losing their jobs.

【译文】 1979年,加利福尼亚大学受到了指控,指控他们在农业方面的研究加速了自动化的进程,而导致了农场工作的工人失业。

【注释】 (1)bring a charge against (sb.)的意思是“指控(某人)”。

【例句】 The police are going to *bring a charge of* murder *against* him. 警方准备指控他犯有谋杀罪。

A charge of receiving stolen goods *was brought against* this man. 他被指控接收赃物。

【注释】 (2)led to后面带有两个宾语,一个是 increased automation,一个是 losing their jobs,而 farm workers 则是动名词 losing 的逻辑主语。

6. 【原文】 ... the results of research have been of benefit to the community as a whole through increased productivity and lower food prices, ...

【译文】这项研究的成果是对整个社会有益的,它通过提高生产力降低了食品的价格,.....

【注释】 短语 as a whole 的意思是“作为整体”。

【例句】 Is the collection going to be divided up or sold *as a whole*? 这批收藏品是分散了卖还是一块儿卖?

Industrial production *as a whole* increased by 20 per cent. 工业生产作为整体增长了20%。

这个短语还有一个意思是“总的说来”。

【例句】 *As a whole*, the relocation seems to have beneficial. 总的说来,这次迁移似乎是有利的。

The population *as a whole* is in favor of the reform. 总的说来全体居民都支持这项

改革。

7. 【原文】 ... in any case the social consequences of its research were the responsibility of the whole community rather than of the University .

【译文】并且在任何情况下,研究之于社会的后果都应由这个社会来负责,而不应由这个大学来负责。

【注释】 (1)短语 in any case 的意思是“ 无论如何,不管怎样 ”。

【例句】 *In any case* I shall return in a day or two . 不管怎样,我将在一两天后回去。

In any case it is rather unfair of him to do that . 不管怎样,他这样做都相当不公平。

【注释】 (2)rather than 的意思是“ 而不是 ”,它连接的两个部分语法形式应保持一致。

【例句】 The color seems green *rather than* blue . 这颜色似乎是绿而不是蓝。(连接两个形容词)

He ran *rather than* walked . 他是跑着而不是走着。(连接两个过去式的动词)

It is hoped that reason *rather than* prejudice would prevail in the community . 人们希望,在社会上占主导地位的是理智而不是偏见。(连接两个名词)

The dictator relied on abuse of his opponents *rather than* on sound reasoning . 那个专横的人依赖的是对对手的谩骂,而不是令人信服的论辩。(连接两个介词短语)

It was what he meant *rather than* what he said . 这是他的真实意思,而不是他口头所说的话。(连接两个名词从句)

这个短语还有一个意思是“ 与其.....宁愿 ”,在这种情况下 rather than 之后用动词原形。

【例句】 *Rather than* allow the vegetables to go bad, he sold them at half price . 与其让蔬菜烂掉,他宁愿半价把它们卖出去。

Rather than cause trouble, he left . 与其引起麻烦,他宁愿离开。

8. 【原文】 It was generally accepted that within the next few decades developments in the biological sciences will radically change civilization as we know it today .

【译文】 关于在今后的几十年中,生物学的发展将会彻底改变我们今天已了解的文明的观点被广泛接受了。

【注释】 句中的 as 是一个连词,引起方式状语从句,意思是“ 按照,像 ”。

【例句】 I did *as* he asked, and he put the paper in his pocket . 我按照他的要求做了,于是他就把那个文件放进口袋。

Leave the table *as* it is . 桌上的东西就按现在那样放着别动。

When at Rome do *as* the Romans do . 入乡随俗。(谚语)

Do it *as* I do (it) . 你像我这样做。

9. 【原文】 In the first place scientists — especially those doing pure research — often do not know what sort of discovery they are likely to make, ...

【译文】 首先,科学家们——尤其是那些从事单纯科学研究的人——常常不知道他们所要做出的是什么样的发明,.....

【注释】 短语 *in the first place* 的意思是“ 第一点, 首先 ”。

【例句】 Now, *in the first place* what made you go so suddenly, and in the second why did you leave no message ? 第一, 是什么使你突然走掉, 其次, 为什么你不留个条 ?

In the first place, I must explain that I can't speak English very well . 首先我得解释一下, 我的英语讲得不十分好。

10 . 【原文】 ... most scientists do have a feeling of responsibility toward society, ...

【译文】大多数科学家都是确有社会责任感的,

【注释】 句中的 do 是助动词, 用来强调 have。

11 . 【原文】 ... but how far they are able to influence the application of their work is another matter .

【译文】但是对于他们的研究成果他们自己具有多少左右力就是另一个问题了。

【注释】 how far they are able to influence the application of their work 是主语从句, 在这里 far 的意思是“ 到.....地步 ”。

【例句】 I don't know how *far* I should believe him . 我不知道应该相信他到什么程度。

How *far* was he responsible for what had happened ? 他在多大的程度上为所发生的事负责 ?

12 . 【原文】 What they can do is to keep the public informed and especially to advise politicians and other influential persons .

【译文】 他们力所能及的事情就是让公众知道他们所做的研究, 尤其是给与那些政治家们和有影响力的人们建议。

【注释】 keep sb . informed 的意思是“ 让某人了解 ”。

【例句】 *Keep me informed* of what happens . 随时向我报告发生的情况。

Keep me informed of fresh developments . 随时让我了解最新的发展。

13 . 【原文】 One of the problems is to arrive at a general agreement about social values and goals .

【译文】 存在的问题之一就是对于其社会价值和目标各方怎样达成一致。

【注释】 短语动词 arrive at 的意思是“ 得出(结论等) ”。

【例句】 What decision did you finally *arrive at* ? 你最后做出什么决定了 ?

I wish he would *arrive at* some conclusion . 但愿他能得出某种结论。

14 . 【原文】 First he makes the point, which I agree, that the general run of scientists outside their own specialty are no wiser than non-scientists, nor are they free from prejudice and emotional attitudes .

【译文】 首先它阐明了论点, 即那些科学家总体上在他们专业以外的领域并不比非科学家高明多少。他们也会持有偏见或感情用事, 对这一论点我持同意态度。

【注释】 (1) make a point 的意思是“ 详述论点, 提出观点 ”。

【例句】 All right, you've *made your point*: now keep quiet and let the others say what they think . 好吧, 你已经详细说明了你的论点, 现在请安静, 让别人说他们的想法。

But here I think there is *a point worth making* . 但是在这里我认为有一点值得提出。

【注释】 (2) be free from 的意思是“没有,不受……损害”。

【例句】 Quickly I took three aspirins, so as to *be free from* pain for half an hour . 我很快吃了三片阿司匹林,以便半个小时不头疼。

The administration *was free from* corruption . 这个管理部门没有腐败。

【注释】 (3) 副词 no 和形容词或副词的比较级连用时的意思是“并不……些”。

【例句】 His French was *no* better than Pastier 's English . 他的法语并不比巴司提儿的英语好多少。(两人的外语水平都不怎么样)

It is *no* faster to go there by train than by car . 乘火车到那里去比坐汽车快不了多少。(都要花许多时间)

【注释】 (4) nor 的意思是“也不,也没有”,放在第二个分句的开头,句子要倒装。

【例句】 He never went again, *nor* did he write to apologize . 他再也没有去,也没有写信道歉。She had understood nothing, *nor* had she sought to understand . 她什么也没弄明白,她也不想弄明白。

15 . 【原文】 Indeed even within their own field they are sometimes intolerant of the views of colleagues with whom they disagree .

【译文】 实际上,就是在他们的专业领域中有时他们也无法容下同行们的不同观点。

【注释】 形容词 intolerant 的意思是“不能容忍的”,与介词 of 连用。

【例句】 He is a man who is *intolerant of* opposition . 他是一个不能容忍别人反对的人。Some pious church-goers are *intolerant of* other religions . 有些虔诚的到教堂做礼拜的人不能容忍其他的宗教。

16 . 【原文】 ... , but outside that most scientists should be regarded in the same light as other citizens of comparable standing .

【译文】但在其专业领域之外,大多数科学家应受到与其地位相当的一般公民的同等对待。

【注释】 in a ... light 的意思是“以……的理解、目光、态度”。

【例句】 I suddenly saw all the arguments *in a different light* . 我忽然对所有这些论据有了不同看法。

He does not see this matter *in the same light* as we do . 他和我们的看法不同。

17 . 【原文】 It is up to society to take — and pay for — measures against the unwanted side-effects such as pollution or invasion of privacy .

【译文】 应由社会来采取某种措施来消除其负面后果,诸如污染或侵犯隐私权,并为之付出代价。

【注释】 (1) be up to sb . to (do sth .) 的意思是“应由某人(做某事)”。

【例句】 It *is up to you* to get the work done . 这工作应该由你来完成。

It *is up to parents* to teach their children manners . 教孩子有礼貌是家长的责任。

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 pay for 的意思是“付……的钱,赔偿”。

【例句】 I 've already *paid for* it . 我已经付过钱了。

Have those articles been *paid for*, Madam ? 这些东西已经付过钱了吗,夫人 ?

它还有一个意思是“为……付出代价”。

【例句】 Sometimes we have had to *pay dearly for* mistakes . 有时我们不得不为错误付出高昂的代价。

The wrong-doer *pays for* it in the end . 行恶者最终要为之付出代价。

18 . 【原文】 ... a scientist should be responsible for presenting a true picture to the public about new developments in his own field, and for indicating possible implications so far as he can see them .

【译文】 一个科学家有责任对其领域中的新发明向公众提供真实的状况, 并且将他所能够预计的不利情况阐述清楚。

【注释】 (1) responsible for 后面接两个动名词作宾语, 即 presenting 和 indicating.

【注释】 (2) 名词 picture 在这里的意思是“情况”。

【例句】 Other Latin American countries present a like *picture* . 其他拉丁美洲国家也是类似的情况。

In his later years at Eton the *picture* underwent considerable change . 他在伊顿后几年情况发生了很大变化。

【注释】 (3) so far as 的意思是“尽……所能”。

【例句】 I will help you *so far as* I can . 我将尽我所能帮助你。

His parents supported him *so far as* they could . 他的父母尽其所能支持他。

19 . 【原文】 ... there is no going back, ...

【译文】 没有回头路,

【注释】 there is no (doing) 的意思是“没法(做某事)”。

【例句】 Once let this fellow start talking, *there was no stopping* him . 一旦让那个家伙开始说, 就没法让他停下来。

He 's bad-tempered and selfish, *there is no denying* it, but he 's also a genius . 他脾气不好、自私, 这是没法否认的, 但是他也是一个天才。

There *was no knowing* how long he might be away . 没法知道他可能离开多久。

20 . 【原文】 ... and science and technology will influence our lives and the world we live in to an increasing extent .

【译文】 而科技将会越来越影响我们的生活和我们生存的这个世界。

【注释】 句中的 we live in 是一个定语从句, 省略了关系代词而把介词放在从句的末尾, 等于是 in which we live.

词汇精华

sponsor vt .

- 1 . 发起; 主办 【例句】 China will *sponsor* the 2008 Olympic Games .
【译文】 中国将主办 2008 年奥运会。
【例句】 Our local legislator *sponsored* the new environmental bill .
【译文】 我们当地的立法机关发起这项新的环保议案。
- 2 . 资助, 赞助 【例句】 The tobacco company *sponsors* several television programs .
【译文】 这家烟草公司赞助了几个电视节目。
【例句】 I 'm doing a *sponsored* swim on Saturday — will you sponsor me ?
【译文】 星期六我将举办一次游泳资助比赛——你能赞助我吗 ?

sponsor n . 发起人, 赞助人

foresee vt .

- 1 . 预见 【例句】 They could not have *foreseen* how things would turn out .
【译文】 他们不可能预见事情发展的结局。
【例句】 No one can *foresee* what will happen in the future .
【译文】 谁也无法预见将来会发生什么情况。
- 2 . 预言 【例句】 It 's impossible to *foresee* whether she 'll be well enough to come home from hospital next month .
【译文】 不可能预言她身体是否能好到下星期出院的程度。
【例句】 He *foresaw* that the job would take a long time .
【译文】 他预言这件工作要用很长时间。

foresight n . 远见

assess vt .

- 1 . 估计, 评价 【例句】 The general *assessed* the situation and called for reinforcements .
【译文】 将军估计了一下形势, 要求增援。
【例句】 I 'd *assess* your chances as very high .
【译文】 我估摸你的机会很大。
- 2 . 确定……的价值
【例句】 They sent someone to *assess* the value of the house .
【译文】 他们派人为房子估价。
【例句】 Damages were *assessed* at \$ 20,000 .
【译文】 损失估计为 20 000 美元。

assessment n . 评估; 估价

conclude v .

- 1 . 结束 【例句】 The meeting *concluded* at 8 o 'clock .
【译文】 会议 8 点钟结束。
【例句】 She *concluded* her talk with a funny story .
【译文】 她的演讲以一个有趣的故事结束。

2. 得出结论 【例句】 What do you *conclude* from those facts ?
 【译文】 你从那些事实中得出什么结论 ?
 【例句】 The jury *concluded* from the evidence that she was innocent .
 【译文】 陪审团根据证据做出结论判明她是清白的。
3. 缔结, 签订 【例句】 Britain *concluded* a trade agreement with China .
 【译文】 英国与中国缔结贸易协议。
 【例句】 Transactions were *concluded* on a wide variety of light industrial goods .
 【译文】 在范围很广的轻工业产品方面进行了交易。

conclusion *n.* 结论; 结束语; 缔结

adopt *vt.*

1. 采用, 采纳 【例句】 Circumstances will force us finally to *adopt* this policy .
 【译文】 情况最终将迫使我们采取这一政策。
 【例句】 I *adopted* their method of making the machine .
 【译文】 我采用了他们的方法制造机器。
2. 通过, 批准 【例句】 Congress has *adopted* the new measures .
 【译文】 国会已经批准了这些新措施。
 【例句】 The board *adopt* the proposal after much debate .
 【译文】 董事会经过大量辩论后通过了这一提议。
3. 收养 【例句】 As they had no children of their own, they *adopted* an orphan .
 【译文】 他们没有亲生儿女, 就收养了一个孤儿。
 【例句】 They proposed to *adopt* me as their own son .
 【译文】 他们提议收养我作儿子。

adoption *n.* 采用; 收养; 批准

ideal

1. *n.* 理想 【例句】 Their *ideal* is peace and prosperity .
 【译文】 他们的理想是和平和繁荣。
 【例句】 She 's looking for a job, but hasn 't found her *ideal* yet .
 【译文】 她正在找工作, 但是还没找到合乎理想的。
2. *a.* 理想的 【例句】 I hear you are looking for an office . This place would be *ideal* .
 【译文】 我听说你在找办公处。这个地方很理想。
 【例句】 It would be *ideal*, if she could stay .
 【译文】 要是她能留下来就太好了。

counteract *vt.*

1. 抵消, 缓解 【例句】 This drug should *counteract* snake 's poison .
 【译文】 这种药应该能够缓解蛇毒。
2. 消除 【例句】 We must *counteract* terrorism in the world .
 【译文】 我们必须消除世界上的恐怖主义。
 【例句】 They are *counteracting* the former company leader 's bad influence .
 【译文】 他们正在消除公司前领导人的不良影响。

counteraction *n.* 抵抗; 消除

练习答案

Exercise 1

A scientist should not always be responsible for the results of his or her work. In many cases it is impossible for a scientist to predict the moral consequences of his choice of problem. As a citizen, he has an obligation to see that his skill is used for the benefit of society, but it is also the duty of society.

Exercise 2

1. The main focus of the debate: how far scientists should be responsible to society for the result of their work.
2. The author's purpose of writing paragraph 2: to give an example to support his point of view that university scientists should be responsible for the result of their work.
3. The scientist's dilemma: he often does not know what sort of discovery he is likely to make, or having made it, he cannot foresee the eventual impact on society.
4. The implication of the last sentence in paragraph 4: public opinions may be sometimes even more important than the problem itself.
5. Who should be responsible for the side-effects of an invention? Society.
6. The author's view on the problem (last paragraph): today science is an extremely important part of our culture; scientists must take a positive part in helping people understand the spirit of the brave new world.

Exercise 3

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

Exercise 4

Social Responsibility of Science

. Focus of the debate

How far scientists should be responsible to society for the result of their work?

A. Beneficial effects of a scientist's work

Discoveries may be of immense benefit to mankind.

B. Harmful effects of a scientist's work

Many discoveries may intentionally or unintentionally have disastrous effects on man and on the other inhabitants of this planet.

. Scientists' attitude toward their social responsibility

A. (On the one hand)

The scientists should make the technological assessment of foreseeable benefits and harmful effects, and these should be clearly stated for all to see.

B. (On the other hand)

The decisions and responsibilities should be shared by all sections of the community.

. The author's view on the problem

A scientist should be responsible for presenting a true picture to the public about new developments in his own field, and for indicating possible implications so far as he can see them.

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 . 1) | 2) | 3) | 4) |
| 2 . 1) | 2) | 3) | 4) |
| 3 . 1) <i>n</i> . | 2) <i>n</i> . | 3) <i>adj</i> . | 4) <i>n</i> . |

Exercise 6

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1 . ideal | 2 . intention | 3 . assessment | 4 . consequences |
| 5 . adopt | 6 . sponsored | 7 . prejudice | 8 . occasional |
| 9 . tendency | 10 . concluded | | |

Exercise 7

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 . free from | 2 . apply to | 3 . So far as | 4 . as a whole |
| 5 . short of | 6 . was responsible for | | |
| 7 . up to | 8 . lead to | | |

Exercise 8

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 . B | 2 . B | 3 . A | 4 . A | 5 . D |
| 6 . C | 7 . C | 8 . D | 9 . A | 10 . A |
| 11 . B | 12 . C | 13 . B | 14 . C | 15 . B |
| 16 . D | 17 . D | 18 . B | 19 . B | 20 . A |

Exercise 9

- 1 . Energy is defined as the ability to do work .
- 2 . As years go by, more and more people are seeking to condition their bodies by exercise .
- 3 . Small as it is, the pen is a most useful tool .
- 4 . The accident happened just as the car overtook a lorry .
- 5 . As far as weather goes, the colder it gets the better I like it .
- 6 . Would you be so kind as to help me ?
- 7 . She has worked again as was expected .
- 8 . As long as you are happy, it doesn 't matter if you haven 't got much money .

Exercise 10

- 1 . The house is no bigger than a cabin .
- 2 . Jim is no more careful than you are .
- 3 . I am no more fond of playing chess than he is .
- 4 . This computer is no better than that one .
- 5 . He is no more able to read Spanish than I am .

6. Higgs is no better than Davis in the chemistry exam .
7. There are no more than ten students left in the classroom .
8. Tom 's wife gets up no earlier than Tom does .

参 考 译 文

科学家的社会责任

1. 许多年来,关于科学家因其研究成果应该对社会负多少责任的问题始终争论不休。这个问题尤其适用于大学里的科学家们,因为他们可以自由地选择研究的领域。当今,更多的科学家是为由政府支持的机构或是为企业工作的;在这种情况下,社会责任主要是由聘用他们的机构承担;他们个人完全没有选择的余地,除非他们辞去职位。

2. 1979年,加利福尼亚大学受到了指控,指控他们在农业方面的研究加速了自动化的进程,而导致了农场的工人失业。而大学方面的辩护词却指出:这项研究的成果是对整个社会有益的,它通过提高生产力降低了食品的价格,并且在任何情况下,研究之于社会的后果都应由这个社会来负责,而不应由这个大学来负责。

3. 1970年,英国社会科学责任协会在伦敦召开了有关“现代生物学的社会影响”的国际会议。包括3名诺贝尔奖得主和6名英国皇家学会院士的20名科学家都向会议提交了论文,后来这些论文和论文引发的讨论都发表在一本书中。关于在今后的几十年中,生物科学的发展将会彻底改变我们今天已了解的文明的观点被广泛接受了。被明智应用的发明创造可以给人类带来巨大的益处,但是许多发明创造也会有意或无意地给人类和这个星球上的其他物种带来灾难。对于这些,大多数科学家都十分关注并有很强的良知。但是这个问题却是极其复杂的。首先,科学家们——尤其是那些从事单纯科学研究的人——常常不知道他们所搞的是什么样的发明,或者,做出发明以后,也无法预知它会在社会上产生的最终影响。少数情况下,科学家会突然发现他身处一个很残酷的进退两难的窘境。

4. 大会指出了大多数科学家都是有社会责任感的,但是对于他们的研究成果他们自己具有多少左右力就是另一个问题了。他们力所能及的事情就是让公众知道他们所做的研究,尤其是给与那些政治家们和有影响力的人们建议。当一项技术开发成为现实,他应该受到能代表社会各阶层的人组成的委员会的检验,当然其中也包括这个领域中有资格的科学家。在此各个大学所起到的作用就是提供公正的专家们。科学家们应该对研究的可预见的效益和不良影响做出技术评估,并且将其清楚地加以阐述让所有人都知晓,但是决定以及社会责任则应由社会各阶层共同承担。存在的问题之一就是对于其社会价值和目标各方怎能达成一致。通过媒体来展开公众的讨论对于研究其价值和做出结论是最关键的,但是民主国家在政治上的日常经验可以说明这样做有多么困难。

5. 在我看过的有关科学家对社会的责任的论述中,最清楚的论述之一是出于诺贝尔奖获得者厄恩斯特·钱恩爵士。首先他阐明了论点,即那些科学家总体上在他们专业以外的领域并不比非科学家高明多少。他们也会持有偏见或感情用事,对这一论点我持同意态度。实际上,就是在他们的专业领域中有时他们也无法容下同行们的不同观点。在其能力范畴之内的技术问题和事实问题上,应该寻求和尊重他们的观点;但在其专业领域之外,大多数科学家应受到与其地位相当的一般公民的同等对待。钱恩爵士总结道,不应该让科学家们对其发明中令人不快的后果担负责任;这种责任应由采用了发明的技术应用的社会来承担,应由社会来采取某种措施来消除其负面后果,诸如污染或侵犯隐私权,并为之付出代价。和其他科学家一样,钱恩爵士说科学家们能够做并且应该做到的一点是,抵制新闻媒体夸大和肆意炒作新发明创造的趋势。

6. 在讨论这些问题时,所有的科学家们都认为理想的一点就是,一个科学家有责任对其领域中的新发明向公众提供真实的状况,并且将他所能够预计的不利情况阐述清楚。但是在国防领域供职的科学家很少能有这样做的自由,在工业领域工作的大多数科学家也同样无法做到。最后想说的是,无论批评家们说什么或是期望什么,今天科学

家是我们文化中极其重要的一个组成部分,而现代文明事实上就建立在科技之上;没有回头路,而科技将会越来越影响我们的生活和我们生存的这个世界。因此,人类必须调整自己去适应这种情况,正如适应其他变迁一样。科学家们个人也好,集体也罢,必须积极参与帮助人们了解这个美好的新世界的实质所在。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 “ Finagle ” is not a word that most people associate with science .

【译文】 绝大部分人都不会把“ 欺骗 ”一词与科学联系在一起。

【注释】 associate ... with (sth .) 的意思是“ 把.....和.....联系起来 ”。

【例句】 I always *associate* him *with* fast cars . 我总是把他和快车联系在一起。

Whiskey is usually *associated with* Scotland . 威士忌酒经常和苏格兰联系在一起。

2. 【原文】 ... the image of the scientist is of one who dispassionately collects data in an impartial search for truth .

【译文】科学家在人们脑海中的形象就是,毫无偏见地收集数据而公正地探究真理的人。

【注释】 句中的 of one 前面省略了 the image, one 代替 the scientist。代词 one 常用来代替前面出现过的可数名词以避免重复。

【例句】 I forgot to bring a pen . Can you lend me *one* . 我忘记带钢笔了。你能借我一只吗?

There have been a lot of accidents in the fog . I read about *one* this morning . 大雾中出了不少车祸。今天早上我从报上看到了一起。

如果被代替的名词是复数,则用 ones。

【例句】 And the big fish continues to devour the little *ones* . 大鱼继续吞噬小鱼。

There was one long writing-table and two small *ones* . 有一张长的写字台和两张小的写字台。

3. 【原文】 But scientists have long acknowledged the existence of a “ finagle factor ” — a tendency by many scientists to give a helpful nudge to the data to produce desired results .

【译文】 但是科学家们倒是长久以来就承认“ 欺骗因素 ”的存在——即存在这样的趋势,许多科学家把数据引向有利于自己的方向,从而产生他们期待的结论。

【注释】 动词 acknowledge 的意思是“ 承认 ”。

【例句】 He *acknowledged* it to be true/ that it was true . 他承认那是真的。

He refused to *acknowledge* defeat . 他拒绝承认失败。

这个动词还有一个意思是“ 感谢 ”。

【例句】 Mary *acknowledged* the gift with a pleasant letter . 玛丽用一封愉快的信感谢那份礼物。

We must not fail to *acknowledge* his services to the town . 我们绝不能忘记感谢他对这

个城镇所做的工作。

4. 【原文】 The latest example of the finagle factor in action comes from Stephen Jay Gould, ...
 【译文】 最近一个欺骗因素起作用的实例就是由斯蒂芬·杰伊·古尔德所提供的,.....
 【注释】 短语 in action 的意思是“在运转;在活动”。
 【例句】 The machine is now *in action* . 机器正在运转。
 He is a very good tennis player; you ought to see him *in action* . 他打得一手好网球,你应当看看他打球。
5. 【原文】 Morton was famous in his time not only for gathering a huge collection of skulls but also for analyzing the cranial capacity, or brain size, of the skulls as a measure of intelligence .
 【译文】 莫顿在他所在的时期是非常著名的,这不仅仅是由于他搜集了大量头盖骨标本,而且还由于他还对脑容量(或者叫做脑体积)进行了分析,以此作为智力的衡量标准。
 【注释】 famous for 的意思是“以.....闻名的”。
 【例句】 New York is *famous for* its skyscrapers . 纽约以其摩天大楼而闻名。
 He is *famous for* his fine acting . 他以其精湛的演技闻名。
6. 【原文】 He concluded that whites had the largest brains, that the brains of Indians and blacks were smaller, and therefore, that whites constitute a superior race .
 【译文】 他得出的结论是,白种人的大脑最大,相对于此,印第安人和黑人的大脑就比较小,因此,白种人就代表着优越的种族。
 【注释】 (1)在这个句子中,concluded 后面带有三个由 that 引导的宾语从句。
 【注释】 (2)动词 constitute 的意思是“组成,构成”。
 【例句】 Twelve months *constitute* a year . 一年有 12 个月。
 The behavior of that country *constitutes* an act of aggression against her neighbors . 该国的行为构成对其邻国的侵略。
7. 【原文】 Gould went back to Morton 's original data and concluded that the results were an example of the finagle at work .
 【译文】 古尔德复核了莫顿原始的数据,得出结论:那些结果是欺骗起作用的一个例子。
 【注释】 (1)短语动词 go back to (sth .)的意思是“回过来谈(前面谈到的东西)”。
 【例句】 Let 's *go back to* what the chairman said earlier . 让我们回过来谈主席刚才所说的内容。
 Can I *go back to* what you said at the beginning of the meeting ? 我能回到会议开头时你的话题上来吗?
 它还有一个意思是“回溯,追溯”。
 【例句】 This festival *goes back to* Roman times . 这一节日可以追溯到古罗马时代。
 We have to *go back to* the early years of industrial revolution if we want to trace the history of mass production . 如果想要叙述大批生产的历史,就得追溯到工业革命的早期。

【注释】 (2) 短语 *at work* 的意思是“ 在起作用 ”。

【例句】 She suspected that secret influences were *at work* . 她怀疑某些隐蔽的势力在起作用。
A revolutionary spirit was *at work* . 革命精神当时还在起作用。
这个短语还有一个意思是“ 在工作, 在干活 ”。

【例句】 The street was quiet, the children being at school and the men *at work* . 街道很安静, 因为小孩都上学了, 大人都在干活。

They were watching the artist *at work* . 他们看着那位艺术家忙个不停。

8 . 【原文】 Gorton reached his conclusions, Gould found, by leaving out embarrassing data, using incorrect procedures, making simple arithmetical mistakes (always in his favor) and changing his criteria — again always in favor of his argument .

【译文】 古尔德发现, 莫顿是凭借剔除令他尴尬的数据, 运用不正确的程序, 造成低级的运算错误(差错的结果总是对他有利), 改变他自己的标准——这种更改又总是有利于他自己的论点的——等等做法, 才得出了他的结论的。

【注释】 (1) 短语动词 *leave out* 的意思是“ 遗漏 ”。

【例句】 He *left out* the letter t . 他漏掉了字母 t 。

Don't *leave me out*, please . 请别把我忘了。

【注释】 (2) 短语 *in favor of sb / in sb . 's favor* 的意思是“ 有利于某人 ”。

【例句】 The exchange rate is *in favor of* us today . 今天的兑换率对我们有利。

A diploma is *in your favor* when applying for a job . 申请工作时有个文凭对你有利。
此外, *in favor of* (sth .) 的意思是“ 赞成 ”。

【例句】 They were *in favor of* free trade . 他们赞成自由贸易。

The students were *in favor of* reform . 学生们赞成改革。

9 . 【原文】 Morton has been thoroughly discredited by now .

【译文】 到现在, 莫顿已经完全没有可信度了。

【注释】 短语 *by now* 的意思是“ 到现在, 这时 ”。

【例句】 I hope you've understood *by now* what I mean . 我希望到现在你已经懂得我的意思了。

She was *by now* in her late thirties . 这时她已经快 40 岁了。

10 . 【原文】 Scientists do not believe that brain size reflects intelligence, ...

【译文】 科学家们都不再相信大脑的体积代表了智力高下的这一说法,

【注释】 动词 *reflect* 的意思是“ 反映 ”。

【例句】 The literature of a period *reflects* its values and tastes . 一个时期的文学反映该时期的价值观和情趣。

Her sad looks *reflected* the nature of her thoughts . 她忧郁的面容反映她思想的特征。

11 . 【原文】 ... and Morton's brand of raw racism is out of style .

【译文】而且莫顿式的种族主义也早已过时了。

【注释】 短语 *out of style* 的意思是“ 不再流行 ”。

【例句】 These hats are *out of style* . 这些帽子已经过时了。

- 12 . 【原文】 Some of the leading figures in science are believed to have used the finagle factor .
- 【译文】 据信科学界的一些重要人物都使用过欺骗因素。
- 【注释】 (1)形容词 leading 的意思是“领先的;主要的”。
- 【例句】 She was one of the *leading* writers of her day . 她是当时主要的作家之一。
My *leading* motive for writing the book was to enlighten the public . 我写这本书的主要动机就是开导公众。
- 【注释】 (2)to have used 是动词不定式的完成式,表示先于谓语动词的动作,在句中作 believed 的补足语。动词不定式的完成式常用在某些动词后面补足语。
- 【例句】 He is said *to have written* seven novels . 据说他已经写了 7 本小说。
The enemy was reported *to have surrendered* . 据报敌人投降了。
Isaac Newton is believed *to have said*,“ If I have seen farther than other men, it is because I have stood on the shoulders of giants .”据信伊萨克·牛顿曾经说过:“如果我看得比别人远,那是因为我站在巨人的肩膀上。”
- 13 . 【原文】 The success of Mendel 's work was based on finding a three-to-one ratio in the dominant and recessive characteristics of hybrid plants he was breeding .
- 【译文】 门德尔的工作成功之处就在于他发现了他所培育的杂交植物中,显性与隐性的比率为 3 比 1。
- 【注释】 动词 breed 的意思是“养殖,培育”。
- 【例句】 Many farmers *breed* cows and sheep . 许多农民养殖牛羊。
After many experiments, we have *bred* four strains of high-yielding rice . 经过多次实验,我们培育了 4 个高产水稻品种。
- 14 . 【原文】 But scientists . . . have found that the results are literally too good to be true .
- 【译文】 但是最近科学家们.....却发现他的结论精妙得简直不可信。
- 【注释】 too good to be true 的意思是“好得令人难以置信”。
- 【例句】 The news is *too good to be true* . 这消息好得令人难以相信。
- 15 . 【原文】 Like Morton, Mendel gave himself the benefit of the doubt .
- 【译文】 像莫顿一样,门德尔是在证据不足的情况下就肯定了自己的假设。
- 【注释】 give sb . the benefit of the doubt 的意思是“因证据不足而假定某人无罪”,转义为“在没有相反的证据以前暂时相信某人的话”。
- 【例句】 By allowing her to go free the judge *gave the accused the benefit of the doubt* . 因证据不足,法官判定被告无罪而将她释放。
George 's mark was higher than usual and he might have cheated, but his teacher *gave him the benefit of the doubt* . 乔治的分数比平常高得多,很可能在考试中作弊了,但是由于没有证据,老师还是肯定了他的分数。
- 16 . 【原文】 The same tendency is observable in almost every controversial area of science today — the fight over race and intelligence, the dispute about generic vs . trade name drugs, the argument about nuclear energy, and so on .

【译文】 这种倾向在今天几乎所有存在争议的科学领域中都存在——有关种族和智力的争议, 非专利药品与商标名药品的争议, 有关核能的论战, 等等。

【注释】 (1) 介词 *over* 在这里的意思是“关于, 在(某事)上”。

【例句】 They often quarrel *over* politics . 他们经常在政治上争论。

She was excited *over* outing . 她为外出而兴奋。

【注释】 (2) 介词 *vs* 是 *versus* 的缩写形式, 意思是“和……相对, 对抗”。

【例句】 Today 's football match is The School *versus* The Old Boys . 今天的足球赛是校队对校友队。

The poem handles the problem of instinct *versus* intellect in man . 这首诗论述人的本能和智力之争。

17 . 【原文】 It is only occasionally that the finagle factor breaks out into pure dishonesty .

【译文】 只有在偶尔的情况下, 欺骗因素才演变为不折不扣的弄虚作假。

【注释】 短语动词 *break out* 的意思是“突然出现, 突然发生”。

【例句】 War *broke out* in 1939 . 战争于 1939 年爆发。

Influenza usually *breaks out* in winter . 流感通常在冬季发生。

18 . 【原文】 ... intelligence is mostly inherited .

【译文】智力主要来源于遗传。

【注释】 动词 *inherit* 的意思是“继承”。

【例句】 He *inherited* some money from his grandfather . 他从祖父那里继承了一些钱。

She *inherited* her mother 's good looks and her father 's bad temper . 她继承了母亲的美貌和父亲的坏脾气。

19 . 【原文】 It now appears that Burt invented not only a good part of his results but also made up two collaborators whose names appear on his scientific papers .

【译文】 现在看起来, 伯特不仅仅是编造了一部分结果, 而且还杜撰出两个合作者, 并把他们的名字写到了他的科学报告上。

【注释】 短语动词 *make up* 有许多意思主要有以下几个:

(1) 构成, 组成

【例句】 These arguments *make up* the case for the defense . 这些论据构成了被告的抗辩。

What are the qualities that *make up* her character ? 她的性格是由哪些特质组成的 ?

(2) 编造, 创造

【例句】 I could not remember a story to tell the children, so I *made one up* as I went along . 我想起什么故事可讲给孩子们听, 因此我随讲随编。

Not having a good excuse for being late, Sally *made one up* . 萨丽迟到找不到适当的借口, 就编造了一个。

(3) 化装

【例句】 At one time it was not considered good taste for women to *make up* . 妇女涂脂抹粉一度被认为是庸俗的事情。

It may take quite a long time before an actor is properly *made up* for a part .一个演员按照他所扮演的角色化妆妥当,有时要花很长的时间。

(4)整理,收拾

【例句】 Sister sat down on the wire-works of the bed .I had not had time to *make it up* .我妹妹坐在床的钢丝架上,我还没来得及铺好被褥。

She *made up* a basket of food for the picnic .她收拾好一篮子食品供野餐用。

(5)和解,言归于好

【例句】 The two friends had a quarrel, but they have now *made it up* .这两个朋友曾经争吵,但是现在已经言归于好。

You don 't really hate each other, so why don 't you kiss and *make up* ?你俩并不是当真相互仇恨,为什么不握手言欢呢?

20 . 【原文】 The moral that Gould draws from his study of Morton is not that scientists are wicked but that they are just human beings, like the rest of us, and so should be subject to skepticism like the rest of us .

【译文】 古尔德从研究莫顿中得出的教训并不是说,科学家不道德,只是说科学家也是人,像其他人一样,因此也应该像我们一样受到怀疑。

【注释】 (1) the rest 的意思是“ 其余的部分或人 ”。

【例句】 How 'll we kill *the rest* of the time ?我们怎样打发其余的时间呢?

Those are mine, Robert; *the rest* are yours .罗勃特,那些是我的;其余的是你的。

【注释】 (2) 形容词 subject 后面接介词 to,意思是“ 容易感受,可能会 ”。

【例句】 I am *subject to* colds .我容易患感冒。

The timetable is *subject to* alternation .时刻表常有改动。

这个词的另一个意思是“ 以……为条件,尚待 ”。

【例句】 The plan is *subject to* the director 's approval .这项计划经董事长批准才能生效。

He will do it *subject to* his father 's consent .他父亲同意他才会这样做。

21 . 【原文】 In other words, listen to what science has to say, but never get far away from a grain of salt .

【译文】 换言之,即要听从科学箴言,但绝不能毫无判断地全听全信。

【注释】 (1) 短语 in other words 的意思是“ 换句话说,也就是说 ”。

【例句】 I soon found that the work I was doing had already been done by someone else — *in other words*, I was wasting my time .我不久就发现我做的这项工作已经有人做过另了,也就是说,我在浪费时间。

Literal translation, *in other words*, word-for-word translation, is not to be encouraged .直译,换句话说,逐字的翻译法,不应提倡。

【注释】 (2) 短语动词 get away from 的意思是“ 离开,摆脱 ”。

【例句】 I won 't be able to *get away from* the office before seven .7点钟以前我不能离开办公室。

Now he was dead, and I could not *get away from* my sadness .现在他死了,而我却不

能摆脱伤感。

【注释】 (3)短语 a grain of salt 来自于 with a grain of salt,意思是“采取保留的态度”。

【例句】 Many of them took my budding local pretensions to being somebody *with a very large grain of salt* . 他们中间有许多人对我在当地刚刚获得的声望采取保留的态度。

Take his words *with a grain of salt*; he doesn't tell lies, but sometimes he stretches the truth . 听他的话要打折扣; 他不说谎, 但是有时夸大事实。

语法告诉你

As 的用法

1. 作介词用

(1)引导同位语,意思是“作为,以……身份”,例如:

I am speaking *as* your friend . 我是作为你的朋友在说话。

I respect *as* a writer and *as* a man . 我尊敬他是因为他是作家,也是个男子汉。

(2)引导补足语(宾语补足语和主语补足语),经常接用 *as* 引导宾语补足语动词有 accept, account, appoint, classify, count, declare, define, describe, express, picture, presume, regard, state, take, treat, look on, refer to, think of 等。例如:

He seemed to retard it *as* a small triumph . 他似乎认为那是一次小胜利。

He has taken up photography *as* a hobby . 他把摄影当作业余爱好。

I wonder it was who that defined man *as* a rational animal . 我不知道是谁把人定义为理性的动物。

2. 作连词用

(1)引导时间状语从句,意思是“当……时,随着”,例如:

The audience stood up *as* the hero entered the hall . 当英雄进入大厅时,听众全都站起来了。

We get wiser *as* we get older . 随着年龄增长,我们也变的越来越睿智。

Metals generally become weaker *as* the temperature rises . 随着温度的升高,金属强度通常降低。

(2)引导原因状语从句,意思是“因为,由于”,例如:

As you weren't there I left a message . 因为你不在那儿,我就留了个口信。

As she's been ill perhaps she'll need some help . 因为她一直生病,也许需要一些帮助。

As water is a good solvent, pure water is never met with in nature . 由于水是一种很好的溶剂,所以在自然界从未遇见过纯水。

(3)引导让步状语从句,意思是“虽然,尽管”,这时句子要倒装,例如:

Talented *as* he is, he is not yet ready to turn professional . 尽管他才华横溢,他现在还不愿成为专业人员。

Light *as* air is, it has weight . 尽管空气很轻,它也是有重量的。

Great *as* our achievements are, we should never be content with them anyway . 虽然我们的成绩

巨大,但我们无论如何决不能自满。

(4) 引导方式状语从句,意思是“按照”,例如:

Why didn't you do *as* you were instructed to do? 为什么你不按照我教给你的那样做呢?

He came early, *as* he had been asked (to do). 他按照要求的那样来得很早。

Solids expand and contract *as* liquids and gases do. 固体像液体和气体一样膨胀和收缩。

(5) 引导比较状语从句,意思是“像……一样”,例如:

He works *as* fast *as* a skilled worker. 他干得像熟练工人一样快。

I want you to tell my friend your very interesting experience exactly *as* you have told it to me.
我想让你完全像你给我讲的那样把你那非常有趣的经历讲给我的朋友们听。

No metal conductor is so good *as* silver. 没有像银那样好的金属导体。

3. 作副词用,意思是“那样”,例如:

This dress is twice *as* expensive *as* that. 这件衣服比那件贵一倍。

Run *as* fast *as* you can. 你尽快跑。

I haven't known him *as* long *as* you. 我认识他不如认识你时间长。

4. 作关系代词用,引导定语从句,代替前面的名词或句子,例如:

(1) 与主语中的 *same* 或 *such* 呼应,例如:

We have arrived at the same conclusion *as* they have. 我们得出了和他们同样的结论。

At high temperature the semiconductor has the same conductivity *as* the conductor. 高温下半导体具有和导体相同的导电性。

He never remembered to have such weariness *as* he felt now. 他不记得曾经有过像现在所感到的这样疲倦。

Ultrasonic sound is *such* *as* is inaudible to the human ear. 超声波的声音是人耳听不见的一种声音。

(2) 代替整个主句,可以翻译成“这;正如”,这种定语从句可以放在句首、句中或句末,例如:

As was expected, he performed the task with success. 正如所预料的那样,他成功地完成了任务。

As is shown in the figure, the world's population is increasing with each passing year. 如图所示,世界人口正在逐年增长。

She was not unconscious, *as* could be judged from her eyes. 她没有失去知觉,这从她的眼睛可以看出。

The conductor, *as* its name implies, conducts electricity and heat. 正如它的名字所暗示的那样,导体传导电和热。

He is absent, *as* is often the case. 他像经常的情况一样缺席。

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean, *as* you know. 你知道,塞浦路斯是地中海的一个岛。

5. 用于各种短语,例如:

as a matter of fact 事实上,实际上

as if though 仿佛

as a result 结果

as it is 根据现在情况看

as a result of 由于	as it were 可以(这样)说
as a rule 一般,通常	as long as 只要
as a whole 总的说来	as soon as 一.....就
as ... as one can 尽可能,尽量	as usual 像平常一样
as ... as possible 尽可能,尽量	as well 也,还
as follows 如下	as well as 以及
as for/ to 至于,说到	may as well 不妨
as good as 实际已经,几乎已经	so far as 就.....而言

练习答案

Exercise 1

- 1 . A scientist is a person who devotes himself to seeking scientific truth . He does not easily accept ready answers and would rather do experiments to prove everything that is not explained satisfactorily so far . He is observant and likely to find something that an average person may ignore or take for granted . A successful scientist is accurate and critical of his own work as well others ' . He is persistent and never stops until a satisfactory result is obtained .
- 2 . (open)

Exercise 2

- 1 . D 2 . C 3 . D 4 . A 5 . D

Exercise 3

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1 . disputes | 2 . image | 3 . characteristic | 4 . foundation |
| 5 . factor | 6 . data | 7 . acknowledged | 8 . procedure |
| 9 . reflect | 10 . ratio | | |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 . broke out | 2 . made ... up | 3 . in favor of | 4 . out of style |
| 5 . Leave ... alone | 6 . left out | 7 . are subject to | 8 . at work |

Exercise 5

- 1 . It is necessary that you (should) bring a notebook to class with you every day .
- 2 . It is urgent that the police (should) be notified about those strange phone calls .
- 3 . It is important that no one (should) say anything to him .
- 4 . It is advisable that a seat (should) be reserved on this train .
- 5 . It is vital that we (should) not permit our competitors to know our plans
- 6 . It is desirable that the course in general science (should) be taken before the chemistry course .

7. It is essential that you (should) not write checks for more money than you have in your account .

8. It is demanded that you (should) be finished in two days .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是虚拟语气在某些名词从句中的用法,关于这部分内容参见本系列辅导第一册第四单元“语法告诉你”。

参 考 译 文

科学与真理

1. 绝大部分人都不会把“欺骗”一词与科学联系在一起。现今科学所以受到人们如此的崇敬,原因之一就是科学家在人们脑海中的形象就是毫无偏见地收集数据而公正地探究真理的人。在任何争论中,通常只要是运用了“科学上说”,辩论的反方就无言以对了。

2. 但是科学家们倒是长久以来就承认“欺骗因素”的存在——即存在这样的趋势,许多科学家把数据引向有利于自己的方向,从而产生他们期待的结论。最近一个欺骗因素起作用的实例就是由哈佛的生物学家斯蒂芬·杰伊·古尔德所提供的,他检验了19世纪塞缪尔·乔治·莫顿的重要成果。

3. 莫顿在他所在的时期是非常著名的,这不仅仅是由于他搜集了大量头盖骨标本,而且还由于他还对脑容量(或者叫做脑体积)进行了分析,以此作为智力的衡量标准。他得出的结论是,白种人的大脑最大,相对于此,印第安人和黑人的大脑就比较小,因此,白种人就代表着优越的种族。

4. 古尔德复核了莫顿的原始数据,得出结论:那些结果是欺骗起作用的一个例子。“我重新分析了莫顿的数据,”古尔德上个星期在期刊《科学》中写道,“发现那些结果都是用臆断和欺骗拼凑在一起的,数据是受到他习惯性的先验排列法(他的同胞排在上,奴隶排在下面)控制的,也许他自己都没有意识到。”

5. 古尔德发现,莫顿是凭借剔除令他尴尬的数据,运用不正确的程序,造成低级的运算错误(差错的结果总是对他有利),改变他自己的标准——这种更改又总是有利于他自己的论点的——等等做法,才得出了他的结论的。

6. 如果置之不理,古尔德的这一发现也并不特别令人不安。到现在,莫顿已经完全没有可信度了。科学家们都不再相信大脑的体积代表了智力高下的这一说法,而且莫顿式的种族主义也早已过时了。但是古尔德继续说道,莫顿的情况仅仅是“科学工作中一个常见问题之公认的极坏的实例”。据信科学界的一些重要人物都使用过欺骗因素。

7. 其中之一就是格罗格·门德尔,他的成就是现代遗传学的基础。门德尔的工作成功之处就在于他发现了他所培育的杂交植物中,显性与隐性的比率为3:1。是他发现了这一比率。但是最近科学家们复核了他的数据,却发现他的结论精妙得简直不可信。像莫顿一样,门德尔是在证据不足的情况下就肯定了自己的假设。

8. 这一切都极为重要,因为欺骗因素仍旧在起着作用。例如在有关糖精的争辩中,引人关注的是,所有由制糖产业赞助的研究都发现人造甜味剂食用不安全;而由药疗食品业赞助的研究却认为食用糖精没有什么问题。

9. 没有人暗示说科学家不诚实,只不过他们会自然地有一种很强烈的倾向去找到支持他们自身信念的数据。这种倾向在今天几乎所有存在争议的科学领域中都存在——有关种族和智力的争议,非专利药品与商标名药品的争议,有关核能的论战,等等。

10. 只有在偶尔的情况下,欺骗因素才演变为不折不扣的弄虚作假。其中一个实例似乎应该是英国科学家西里尔·伯特,他的研究被用于支持这样一个观点:智力主要来源于遗传。现在看起来,伯特不仅仅是编造了一部分结果,而且还杜撰出两个合作者,并把他们的名字写到了他的科学报告上。

11. 古尔德从研究莫顿中得出的教训并不是说科学家不道德,只是说科学家也是人,像其他人一样,因此也应该

像我们一样受到怀疑。换言之,即要听从科学箴言,但绝不能毫无判断地全听全信。

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

- 1 . Music — Instruments & Equipment
- 2 . Service/ Business — Photographic
- 3 . Wheels — Domestic
- 4 . Travel — Ride Board
- 5 . Instruction — Sports

Practice 2

- 1 . If you wanted to buy some second hand furniture, you would go to THE SECOND HAND SHOP, 27 Church Road, Gatley.
- 2 . You would phone 4429900 if you wanted carpets fitted .
- 3 . You could contact ELECTRICIAN of S . J . Screeon or W . Foster, if you wanted to have an electric socket fitted .
- 4 . If you wanted your roof repaired, you would prefer to contact P . J . Ryan because you want to save money . Or, you would prefer to contact Member of Federation of Master Builders because you may take quality into consideration .
- 5 . If you wanted to have your house extended, you could contact A . C . WEBB, Mr . Sharp of BUILDING CONTRACTOR or North Cheshire Builders.

翻译实践

Practice 3

- 1 . 这篇文章里有些新术语,它们的意思可能使学生感到困难。
- 2 . 伽利略死于 1642 年,他制造了第一架望远镜。
- 3 . 能量的最重要形式是电能,它广泛地用于我们的生活中。
- 4 . 伯吉斯和里查德·霍格兰两人与卡尔·萨根取得了联系,卡尔热情地欢迎这个想法。
- 5 . 科学的成果就是概念,概念可以用来帮助理解新的经历。

Practice 4

- 1 . 关于在今后的几十年中,生物科学的发展将会彻底改变我们今天已了解的文明的观点被广泛接受了。

2. 当一项技术开发成为现实,他应该受到能代表社会各阶层的人组成的委员会的检验,当然其中也包括这个领域中有资格的科学家。
3. 首先它阐明了论点,即那些科学家总体上在他们专业以外的领域并不比非科学家高明多少。他们也会持有偏见或感情用事,对这一论点我持同意态度。
4. 在讨论这些问题时,所有的科学家们都认为理想的一点就是,一个科学家有责任对其领域中的新发明向公众提供真实的状况,并且将他所能够预计的不利情况阐述清楚。
5. 现今科学所以受到人们如此的崇敬,原因之一就是科学家在人们脑海中的形象就是,毫无偏见地收集数据而公正地探究真理的人。

Practice 5

1. I am responsible to the manager for this matter .
2. We will never stop short of the goal .
3. What the professor says may have some effect on him .
4. This is the first point I want to make .
5. It is up to you whether you accept the job .

写作指导

Practice 6

European universities and American universities are different in many ways . First, European students enroll in fewer courses each term than American students do . Second, European students seldom live at a university . Instead, they live at home and travel to classes . Third, in European universities courses are given by professors who lecture to their classes . In contrast, American professors often ask their students questions or allow their students to form discussion groups . Fourth, European professors ask students to write fewer papers and final examinations are usually oral, while American professors ask students to write more papers and final examinations are usually in written form . Finally, a European university is mainly a place to study . But at most American universities, social activities take up a large part of the students ' time .

Practice 7

Dear Sir ,

I am a teacher in the English Department of Shanxi University . My major is English of Science and Technology .

One of my friends told me that you are hiring an assistant editor of English . As you can see from my resume , I have two years of experience in editing the English journal of our university . I am very interested in working with you and your colleagues .

If you need any other information concerning my background please feel free to contact me .

I look forward to hearing from you soon .

Yours truly .

Li Ming

Li Ming

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

前台服务员:早上好。服务台。

致电者:请给我接通经理好吗?我是李鸿,从悉尼打来的。

前台服务员:对不起,现在经理不在。

致电者:我可以留言吗?

前台服务员:当然。请讲。

致电者:转告他尽快给悉尼的李鸿回电。

示例 2

前台服务员:服务台。我能帮助您吗?

致电者:我是比尔·格林。请给我接通分机 9560 好吗?

前台服务员:格林先生,对不起。9560 占线。

致电者:能接一下 9561 吗?我是从伦敦打来的。

前台服务员:好的,我试一下。请别挂机。

致电者:好。

前台服务员:格林先生,您的电话已接通。对方正在振铃。

致电者:非常感谢。

2. 根据对话内容填空。

Operator: Good morning. Office Suppliers Corporation .

Chang: Good morning . May I speak to Mr . White, your sales manager, please ?

Operator: May I know who is calling, please ?

Chang: This is Chang from the Technology Institute .

Operator: Hold on a second, please .

Chang: OK .

Operator: That 's your party, Miss Chang . Go ahead please .

Chang: Thank you .

3. 根据对话内容,翻译并填空。

Operator: Good morning . Can I help you ?

Wang: May I speak to Mr . Smith, please?

Operator: Who is calling, please ?

Wang: This is Miss Wang from the English Department .

Operator: Hold on, please . Hello, Miss Wang, you 're through . Mr . Smith 's number is ringing .

Wang: Thank you .

4 .

Caller: Hello, I'd like to speak to Mrs . Wu Li .

Receiver: Wu Li ? Nobody by that name works here . I 'm afraid you have dialed a wrong number .

Caller: Isn 't that 5816772 ?

Receiver: No, this is 8516772 .

Caller: Oh, I 'm sorry .

Receiver: Never mind .

5 .

1)

Clerk: Good morning , Accounting Dept .

Li Ming: Good morning , This is Li Ming . May I speak to your Director , Mr . Wang ?

Clerk: Sure . Hold on a second . I 'll get you through .

Li Ming: OK , thank you .

Clerk: Go ahead , please . Mr . Wang 's phone is ringing .

Wang: Hello , this is Wang . Who 's that , please ?

Li Ming: Hello , Mr . Wang . This is Li Ming . I 'd like to inform you that the manager wants to speak to you in his office .

Wang: OK , thank you , Li Ming .

2)

Secretary: Good morning , Mr . Zhao Ming 's office . Can I help you ?

Marry Carter: This is Marry Carter . Please get me through to Mr . Zhao , Please .

Secretary: Hold the line , please . I 'll get you through . Sorry , Mr . Zhao 's line is engaged . Could you call again a few minutes later ?

Marry Carter: Well , OK . Thanks .

Secretary: My pleasure .

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) D 2) B 3) C 4) A 5) B
6) C 7) A 8) D 9) C 10) D

对话原文:

1) W: I don 't think Jane will leave this afternoon . She hasn 't finished her paper yet .

M: Well , she 's already booked a ticket .

Q: When will Jane leave ?

2) M: Hello , I 'd like to make a long-distance call to Beijing , China ?

W: Five dollars for the first three minutes and three dollars for each additional minute .

Q: How much does the man pay if he has a call for four minutes ?

3) W: What do you think of " Gone With the Wind " on TV last night ?

M: Sorry , I was studying for the exam then .

Q: What did the man do last night ?

4) M: Have you got the bread , eggs , and milk ?

W: Yes . Now we need to stand in line to pay for them .

Q: Where does this conversation most probably take place ?

5) M: What a pity you can 't join us for dinner this weekend !

W: I wish I could ,but I 'll have to finish Professor Wang 's assignment .

Q: What is the woman going to do this weekend ?

6) M: I don 't remember this room being this small . I thought it was a lot bigger .

W: So did I .

Q: What do they think of the room ?

7) W: What time did you get home last night ?

M: I left my friend 's home at about 9:20 . I got home at 10:00 .

Q: How long did it take the man to go home ?

8) W: I wonder if I could use your phone ?

M: Oh ,I 'm sorry . You see ,it 's out of order again .

Q: What can we learn from the conversation ?

9) M: Oh ,Mr . Wang gave us hard assignments .

W: Just to read ten short passages . That 's not too hard .

Q: What is the possible relationship between the two speakers ?

10) M: I think Professor Chen 's lecture is so boring ,and I couldn 't help falling asleep .

W: Well ,it seems that his lecture suits my taste .

Q: What can we learn from the conversation ?

B .

1 .

Question: What is the purpose of this passage ?

Answer: To tell us how to make an efficient long-distance call .

2 .

Points	Mentioned	Not Mentioned
1) You should remember to insert the phone card .		
2) You should know the number of the person you are calling .		
3) You should dial the district number first .		
4) You should consult the telephone directory for the necessary information .		
5) You should have a list of points in hand .		
6) You should know the most economical time to call .		

短文原文:

If you want to make a long-distance telephone call, you 'd better make some preparations . First, you should know the number of the person you are calling ,and the number of his district . The telephone directory may help you with this ,but it could save time if you remember it clearly . Before dialing, you should have the necessary information with you . If you call a friend abroad and ask him to meet you at the airport, you should have a list of points in hand, such as

the dates, time of arrival, number of the airliner, etc . In this way, your telephone call can be an efficient one .

3 .

Telephones have already become an 1) important part of our lives . However ,many English 2) learners still don 't know how to have a telephone 3) conversation with an English speaking friend . For 4) instance, a caller may pick up the phone and 5) say“ Who are you ?” Many foreigners 6) feel this is a bit too direct . A much 7) better way is to begin with a 8) greeting such as “ Good morning ” and then ask “ Who 9) may I say is speaking ?” With a good beginning ,the conversation can go on more 10) pleasantly .

4 . 1) D 2) C 3) B

短文原文 :

Many Western families keep pets at home . Pets are animals that are kept in the home for different reasons ,but mainly to provide friendly company and amusement . The two main groups of people who like pets the most are children and elderly people .

From looking after their pets, boys and girls can learn the meaning of responsibility . This is particularly true if they are responsible for feeding the pets and cleaning their cages or boxes . Probably the most popular pets are dogs and cats ,but with children smaller animals are often more welcome , for example ,birds .

Elderly people prefer dogs and cats as pets . They are easy to look after , and return gentle love . In particular ,they provide friendly company which can be important for a person living alone .

Questions :

- 1) Why do people keep pets in their home ?
- 2) Who like to keep pets the best ?
- 3) What is the most important reason for elderly people to keep dogs and cats as pets ?



Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Although I have not appeared on television as the host of the American game show “Let’s Make a Deal” since 1991, ...

【译文】 虽然我从 1991 年开始就没有再作为“我们来做笔交易”这个美国游戏节目的主持人出现在电视上,.....

【注释】 这个句子中的 deal 是名词,意思是“交易,协议”。

【例句】 He was trying to make a *deal* with them . 他在想法和他们做一笔交易。

We did a *deal* with the management on overtime . 我们与管理部门就加班问题达成了协议。

2. 【原文】 ...not a day goes by that someone doesn’t recognise me .

【译文】但是没有一天我不被人们认出来。

【注释】 (1) 短语动词 go by 的意思是“ (时间) 流逝,过去”。

【例句】 The weeks *went slowly by* . 一周周地慢慢过去。

As time *goes by* my memory seems to get worse . 随着时间的流逝,我的记忆力好像更差了。

【注释】 (2) 句中的 that 是关系代词,引出定语从句,修饰表示时间的名词 time, moment, day, year 等,以代替 when。

【例句】 I stay at home on the days *that* I am not busy . 在我不忙的日子里我就待在家里。

He was the only friend I made during the two years *that* I was at college . 他是我上大学的两年中所结交的惟一的朋友。

She went home, the same evening *that* she heard the news . 就在听到这个消息的当天晚上她回到了家里。

3. 【原文】 While I appreciate the fame, I sometimes wish that I were known more for what I do today .
- 【译文】 在我感谢这份荣誉的同时,有的时候也会希望我是因为现在所做的一切而为人所知。
- 【注释】 be known for 的意思是“因……而著称”。
- 【例句】 He *was known for* his frankness . 他因其坦率而著称。
4. 【原文】 I now make more than 50 charity appearances a year and must have raised over \$ 500 million for worthwhile causes .
- 【译文】 现在每年我要出席 50 多次慈善活动,并且我想已经为一些有意义的事情募集了 5 亿多美元。
- 【注释】 (1) make one 's appearance 的意思是“出现,登台”。
- 【例句】 They finally *made their appearance* at 11:30 . 他们最后在 11 点 30 分到达。
This well-known actor *made his first appearance* in 1877 . 这位名演员在 1877 年首次登台。
- 【注释】 (2) must 接完成式动词表示对过去事情的推断,意思是“一定已经,一定曾经”。
- 【例句】 We *must have read* the same report . 我们一定看过同一篇报告。
She *must have received* the parcel: I sent it by registered post . 他们想必已经收到那邮包了:我是用挂号寄出的。
5. 【原文】 Countless times I 've seen that if you cast your bread upon the waters, it will come back hundred-fold .
- 【译文】 无数次我看到了如果你不计回报地做了好事,都会得到加倍的回报。
- 【注释】 成语 cast one 's bread upon the waters 的意思是“施恩不图报”。
- 【例句】 Nowadays fewer and fewer people are willing to *cast their bread upon the waters* . 现在愿意施恩而不图报的人越来越少了。
6. 【原文】 But there is one story in particular that, for me, illustrate the point .
- 【译文】 但是对我来说有一件事情却尤其能印证这一点。
- 【注释】 (1) 短语 in particular 的意思是“特别是”。
- 【例句】 My mind had several plans, and one *in particular* seemed good and feasible . 我的脑子里有几个计划,其中特别有一个似乎很好而又可行。
Bacteriology, *in particular*, microbiology, had fascinated him from his earlier student days . 细菌学,特别是微生物学,从他上大学的早期就使他着迷。
- 【注释】 (2) 动词 illustrate 的意思是“(以事例或图表)说明”。
- 【例句】 To *illustrate* my point I have made a comparative analysis . 为了说明我的论点,我做了比较性的分析。
The company 's bank statements *illustrate* its success . 该公司的银行报告可以说明它是成功的。
7. 【原文】 To this day it can still move me to tears .

【译文】 直到今天它仍然使我感动得声泪俱下。

【注释】 (1) 短语 *to this day* 的意思是“至今”。

【例句】 *To this day*, I still don't know why she did it . 我至今也不明白她为什么那样做。
I haven't told him the whole story *to this day* . 我至今也没有把全部过程告诉他。

【注释】 (2) *move/ reduce ... to tears* 的意思是“使……感动得流泪”。

【例句】 The sight *moved her to tears* . 这景象使她感动得流泪。

The old man's story *reduced Mary to tears* . 老人的故事使玛丽感动得流泪。

8 . 【原文】 But after a year and a half at the University of Manitoba, his money had run out .

【译文】 但是, 在马尼托巴大学上了一年半后, 他积攒的钱就全部用完了。

【注释】 短语动词 *run out* 的意思是“被用完”。

【例句】 The petrol is *running out* . 汽油快用光了。

Our time is *running out* . 我们的时间快到了。

要注意和另一个短语区别开: *run out of* 的意思是“ (人) 用完 (某物)”。

【例句】 We are *running out of* petrol . 我们的汽油快用光了。

We are *running out of* time . 我们的时间快到了。

9 . 【原文】 The boy's weekly nine-dollar salary helped out tremendously .

【译文】 这孩子一个星期挣回来的 9 美元可是帮了家里大忙了。

【注释】 短语动词 *help (...) out* 的意思是“帮助(……)摆脱困难或解决问题”。

【例句】 He's always willing to *help (us) out* when we're short of staff . 我们缺人手时, 他总是乐于帮我们的忙。

Tom *helps out* in the store after school . 汤姆放学后到商店去帮忙。

10 . 【原文】 I'll put you through university .

【译文】 我要资助你念完大学。

【注释】 短语动词 *put through* 有几种不同的含义:

(1) *put sb . through sth* . 的意思是“供某人上学”。

【例句】 He *put* all his children *through* boarding school . 他供他所有的孩子上寄宿学校。

He was *put through* university with money left by his grandfather . 他靠他祖父留下的钱上完了大学。

另一个意思是“使某人经受(不愉快的事)”。

【例句】 You *put* your family *through* much suffering . 你使你的家庭受了很多苦。

Trainee commandos are *put through* an exhausting assault course . 受训的突击队员接受一门令人筋疲力尽的突击训练课程。

(2) *put sth . through* 的意思是“实现, 完成”。

【例句】 The government is *putting through* some radical social reforms . 政府正在实行某些根本性的社会改革。

I'd be obliged if you would *put* my application for a visa *through* as quickly as possible . 如果我的签证申请能尽快完成, 我将不胜感激。

(3) *put sth. through sth.* 的意思是“使计划、建议等通过”。

【例句】 The bill was *put through* in the House with blind haste. 议案在下议院匆匆忙忙通过了。

These proposals have to be *put through* several committees before they become part of the constitution. 这些提议要经过几个委员会才能成为宪法的一部分。

(4) *put sb / sth. through (to)* 的意思是“接通电话”。

【例句】 I'm trying to *put you through*. 我正在设法接通你所要的号码。

Could you *put me through* to the manager? 请替我接经理。

13. 【原文】 ... the shirtmaker looked them over and said: ...

【译文】这位制衣商仔细地看了一遍说道:.....

【注释】 短语动词 *look over* 的意思是“检查,细看”。

【例句】 We must *look over* the house before we decide to rent it. 决定租房前我们必须仔细看看房子。

Here's the mail. I've *looked it over*. 这就是那封信,我已经把它仔细查看过。

14. 【原文】 Add all that in.

【译文】 把这些都加进去。

【注释】 短语动词 *add in* 的意思是“加进去”。

【例句】 Would you *add in* these items, please, in order to complete the list? 请你把这些项目加进去,以使这个单子完整。

Should we *add in* the lemon juice before or after mixing the flour and sugar? 柠檬汁是把糖和面粉和在一起之前加进去,还是在以后加进去?

15. 【原文】 Before handing over a cheque, Freed told the young man, "There are several conditions I insist upon."

【译文】 在弗里德把支票交给年轻人之前,对他说:“我这么做有几个条件。”

【注释】 短语动词 *hand over* 的意思是“移交”。

【例句】 I am resigning as chairman and *handing over* to my deputy. 我就要辞去主席职位,让副主席担任主席。

When Mr. Jones gets old, he will *hand over* his business to his son. 琼斯先生年老时,他将把公司交给他的儿子。

16. 【原文】 The boy sat silently, eyes wide with experiment.

【译文】 这男孩安静地坐在那里,眼睛睁得大大的,充满了期待。

【注释】 句末的 *eyes wide with experiment* 是一个独立主格结构, *eyes* 相当于主语,而 *wide* 相当于表语。在这里介词的意思是“由于”。

【例句】 She was shivering *with* cold. 她冷得发颤。

His eyes shone *with* pleasure. 他的眼睛闪烁着高兴的光芒。

17. 【原文】 The young graduate began repaying the debt as soon as he landed his first job after university.

【译文】 这个年轻的毕业生在毕业以后刚刚找到一份工作时,就开始还他的贷款了。

【注释】 (1)动词 repay 的意思是“归还”。

【例句】 If you lend me \$ 100, I'll *repay* it (to you) tomorrow . 如果你借给我 200 美元,我明天就还(给你)。

Has she *repaid* you the money? 她把钱还给你了吗?

【注释】 (2)动词 land 在这里的意思是“(在竞争中)得到”,例如:

【例句】 If I manage to *land* the job, I'll stand you all a free drink . 如果我能得到这份工作,我请你们大家喝酒。

Did your firm manage to *land* that contract you were telling me about? 你们公司得到了你告诉我的那份合同了吗?

18 . **【原文】** There was one promise the boy made to Max Freed that he could not keep .

【译文】 这个男孩向弗里德做出的其中一个承诺却没有能够兑现。

【注释】 名词 promise 的意思是“诺言”, make a promise 是“做出诺言”, keep a promise 是“信守诺言”, fulfill/ carry out a promise 是“履行诺言”, break a promise 是“食言”。

【例句】 It is easier to *make a promise* than to fulfill it . 做出诺言比履行诺言容易。

Apparently the man had *kept his promise* . 显然,那个人信守了他的诺言。

I am sorry I *broke my promise* . 对不起,我食言了。

19 . **【原文】** ... and because he felt that Max Freed deserved the recognition despite wanting to be anonymous .

【译文】因为他感到虽然马克斯·弗里德不愿公开身份,但是他应该得到人们的认可。

【注释】 介词 despite 的意思是“尽管”。

【例句】 They had a wonderful holiday *despite* the bad weather . 尽管天气不好,他们的假期仍然过得很愉快。

Despite what others say, I think he 's a very nice chap . 不管别人怎么说,我仍然认为他是一个不错的小伙子。

要注意, despite 和 in spite of 同义,但是它本身就是介词,后面不能再接 of。

词汇精华

carve vi .

1 . 雕刻 **【例句】** The artist *carved* you an interesting ornament from this piece of wood .

【译文】 那位艺术家用这块木头为你雕刻了一件很有意思的饰品。

【例句】 The statue was *carved* out of marble .

【译文】 那座雕像是用大理石雕成的。

2 . (经过艰苦努力)取得(社会地位、名声)(out)

【例句】 She *carved out* a name for herself as a reporter .

【译文】 作为记者她为自己创出了名声。

【例句】 He *carved* himself (*out*) a nice position in the business .

【译文】 经过努力,他在公司里取得了显赫地位。

3. 宰割,分割(*up*)

【例句】 The dark days when the imperialists could *carved up* Africa at will are gone .

【译文】 帝国主义者任意宰割非洲的黑暗日子过去了。

【例句】 The victors mercilessly *carved up* the defeated country, each taking an equal share .

【译文】 战胜者无情地分割战败国,各自占领一等份。

4) 切(熟肉)

【例句】 At the dinner-table, Father 's job is to *carve* the meat .

【译文】 在饭桌上,父亲的工作是把肉切开。

【例句】 She *carved* the roast beef and gave us each a portion .

【译文】 她把牛排切开,给我们每人一份。

carving *n.* 雕刻品

scrub *vt.*

1. 擦洗,刷洗

【例句】 He 's down on his knees, *scrubbing* (*away*) .

【译文】 他跪在地上擦洗地板。

【例句】 *Scrub* the walls down before painting them .

【译文】 先把墙壁擦净再涂油漆。

2. 擦掉,刷掉

【例句】 She *scrubbed* the ink stains off her hands .

【译文】 她把手上的墨水渍擦掉。

【例句】 The cleaner *scrubbed* the mess off the carpet .

【译文】 清洁工把地毯上的污垢刷掉。

3. 取消

【例句】 We wanted to go for a picnic, but we had to *scrub* it because of the rain .

【译文】 我们原想出去野餐,可是由于下雨而不得不取消。

【例句】 It costs \$ 10 per meter, no, *scrub* that, it costs \$ 12 per meter .

【译文】 这料子每米 10 美元,不对,我说错了,每米 12 美元。

scrub *n.* 擦洗

scrape *vt.*

1. 擦,刮

【例句】 She is *scraping* the path clear of snow .

【译文】 她正在清扫道路上的积雪。

【例句】 I *scrape* the mud from my boots .

【译文】 我刮掉靴子上的泥。

2. 刮坏,擦伤

【例句】 I fell and *scraped* my knee .

【译文】 我摔倒擦伤了膝盖。

【例句】 I *scraped* the side of my car against a wall .

【译文】 我的汽车擦墙而过,侧面挂坏了。

3. 勉强维持(*by*)

【例句】 The most difficult time was the winter, when he had all the fuel bills to pay, but he managed to *scrape by* with a little money in hand .

【译文】 最困难的时刻是冬天,那时他得支付燃料的账单,但是他用手头的那点钱勉强维持过去了。

【例句】 The first year in the new house was the hardest, but they just *scrape by* on a loan from the bank .

【译文】 在新房子里的第一年最艰难,但是他们靠银行的贷款勉强维持过去了。

scraping *n.* 被刮削下的碎屑

broaden *v.*

1. 变宽, 变阔 【例句】 The road *broadens* (out) after this bend .

【译文】 过了这个拐弯, 马路就变宽起来了。

【例句】 One 's views *broaden* at college .

【译文】 人的视野在高等学校变得开阔。

2. 加宽, 扩大 【例句】 You should *broaden* your experience by traveling more .

【译文】 你应多旅行, 才能拓宽经历。

【例句】 They have *broadened* out the avenue considerably .

【译文】 他们把街道大大加宽了。

afford *v.*

1. 花得起, 经得起

【例句】 They walked because they couldn 't *afford* (to take) a taxi .

【译文】 他们付不起出租车费, 只好步行。

【例句】 I 'd love to go on holiday, but I can 't *afford* the time .

【译文】 我喜欢去度假, 可是抽不出时间。

2. 不冒……险即能做

【例句】 I mustn 't annoy my boss because I can 't *afford* to lose my job .

【译文】 我决不能使老板生气, 因为我不能冒这个险把工作给弄丢了。

【例句】 You can ill *afford* to criticize others when you behave so badly yourself .

【译文】 你自己的行为如此之差, 没有资格去批评他人。

3. 供给, 给予 【例句】 The tree *afforded* us welcome shade .

【译文】 这棵树给我们提供了很好的阴凉。

【例句】 Television *affords* pleasure to many .

【译文】 电视给许多人以乐趣。

inspire *vt.*

1. 激励, 鼓舞 【例句】 His noble example *inspired* the rest of us to greater efforts .

【译文】 他的崇高榜样激励着我们其余的人做出更大努力。

【例句】 His speech *inspired* us to try again .

【译文】 他的讲话鼓励我们再试一次。

2. 予以灵感 【例句】 The Lake District scenery *inspired* Wordsworth to write his greatest poetry .

【译文】 英格兰西北部湖区的景色给了沃德华斯灵感使他写出了他最伟大的诗篇。

【例句】 His best music was *inspired* by the memory of his mother .

【译文】 他的最优秀的音乐之灵感来自于对母亲的回忆。

3. 引起(某种情绪), 使产生(希望、决心等)

【例句】 The good news *inspired* us with hope .

【译文】 这一好消息使我们产生了希望。

【例句】 A fair and kind employer *inspires* loyalty .

【译文】 公正而善良的雇主能唤起忠诚。

inspiration *n.* 鼓舞;灵感

deserve *vt.*

1. 值得,应受到

【例句】 The article *deserves* careful study .

【译文】 这篇文章值得认真研究。

【例句】 She *deserves* a reward for her efforts .

【译文】 她的努力值得赞赏。

【例句】 You *deserve* to succeed .

【译文】 他理应获得成功。

2. *deserve well of* (sb.) 应该受到(某人)好的对待

【例句】 She *deserves well of* her employer .

【译文】 她应该受到雇主的优待。

【例句】 Lincoln *deserved well of* his country .

【译文】 林肯应该受到自己国家的拥戴。

deserving *adj.* 值得.....的

练习答案

Exercise 1

- 1) I would help him out as far as I can .
- 2) (open)

Exercise 2

1. The writer is often recognised by others because he has appeared on television so many times .
2. When Mr . Freed first saw the young man , the latter was on his hands and knees , scrubbing the front steps for a clothing wholesaler .
3. The young man 's family couldn 't support him through college because business was poor , and the family barely scraped by .
4. Mr . Freed decided to put the young man through university .
5. The conditions that Mr . Freed insisted on were as follows . First , the young man should not tell anyone where he got the money ; second , he must maintain top grades ; third , that money was a loan , which he should pay back when he could afford to ; and lastly he must promise to do the same for someone else in his lifetime .
6. At the University he earned high grades . He was near the top of his class and was elected president of the student body . He met the expectation of Mr . Freed .

7 . Generally, he kept his promise after his graduation from university . He repaid all the money in three years and helped several young people through higher study . However he broke one promise he made to Max Freed . He told the story to others because he felt that Max Freed deserved the recognition .

8 . No matter what we do in life , no matter how successful we are , we will be remembered for how we helped others less fortunate than ourselves .

Exercise 3

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F 5) T

Exercise 4

One spring day in 1942 , on the way to his office , Max Freed , a successful shirtmaker , found the 20-year-old son of his butcher was scrubbing the front steps of a company . Later , when he found that the boy longed to go back to university but he could not afford to , he decided to put him through it . He gave the boy a cheque covering his tuition , books and other living expenses . But he insisted on several conditions for it . First , the boy must not tell others where the money came from . Second , the boy must maintain top grades . Third the boy had to pay back the money when he could afford to . Finally , the boy must promise to do the same for someone else in his lifetime . Just as he promised , the boy did quite well in the university . Three years after his graduation , he repaid all the money he borrowed , and he helped several young people through higher study . But he failed to keep one promise . He told the story of Mr . Freed because he felt that it would inspire more people to help others and that Mr . Freed deserved to be known for his good deeds .

What the boy got from Mr . Freed not only helped him to fulfill his dreams , but also reminded him to help others in need all his life . It is a gift of a lifetime .

Exercise 5

1 . 1) *n* . 2) *v* . 3) *n* . 4) *n* .
 2 . 1) 2) 3) 4)
 3 . 1) 2) 3) 4)

Exercise 6

1 . host 2 . inspire 3 . afford 4 . expectation
 5 . deserve 6 . recognition 7 . broadened 8 . maintain
 9 . tuition 10 . fortunate

Exercise 7

1 . put . . . through 2 . insisted upon 3 . went by 4 . wrote down
 5 . carved out 6 . helped . . . out 7 . handing over 8 . paid back
 9 . scrape by 10 . look over

Exercise 8

1 . C 2 . A 3 . D 4 . A 5 . A
 6 . D 7 . A 8 . A 9 . B 10 . B

- 11 . A 12 . D 13 . D 14 . B 15 . A
16 . C 17 . B 18 . B 19 . A 20 . A

Exercise 9

- 1 . It doesn 't matter very much whether they come or not .
- 2 . It is quite likely that he will let you down .
- 3 . It seems that you have taken a dislike to him .
- 4 . It happens that I have had some unpleasant experiences in dealing with him .
- 5 . It is difficult to tell which country is technologically superior in terms of space equipment .
- 6 . It 's impossible that you have found a mistake in a computer 's arithmetic .

Exercise 10

- 1 . moreover 2 . In that case 3 . however
4 . therefore 5 . after all 6 . In other words

参 考 译 文

一份终生受益的礼物

1 . 虽然我从 1991 年开始就没有再作为“ 我们来做笔交易 ”这个美国游戏节目的主持人出现在电视上,但是没有一天我不被人们认出来。在我感谢这份荣誉的同时,有的时候也会希望我是因为现在所做的一切而为人所知。现在每年我要出席 50 多次慈善活动,并且已经为一些有意义的事情募集了 5 亿多美元。

2 . 无数次我看到了如果你不计回报地做了好事,都会得到加倍的回报。但是对我来说有一件事情却尤其能印证这一点。直到今天它仍然使我感动得声泪俱下。

3 . 在 1942 年一个乍暖还寒的春天早上,加拿大温尼伯市的一家衬衫制造公司——赫尔克里士服装制造公司——的老板马克斯·弗里德正赶回他的工厂,胳膊底下还夹着一大捆订单。生意做得很好,尽管只有 30 岁,马克斯却赢得了成功商人的头衔。

4 . 就在他迈步走向办公室的时候,注意到马路对面有一个年轻男子正趴在地上擦拭着服装批发商丘吉尔门前的台阶。这个人看上去很眼熟,弗里德就走过马路去问他:“ 你在这儿干什么 ?”

5 . 这个 20 来岁的人回答道:“ 我是为丘吉尔公司工作的。我老板让我擦台阶。”

6 . “ 你叫什么名字 ?” 弗里德又问,年轻人回答了他。

7 . “ 你父亲是我的屠夫吗 ?” 年轻人回答是的。

8 . 弗里德走进办公室,把那个屠夫叫了进来。“ 我刚才看到你的儿子在办公室对面的一个公司门口擦台阶。他像是个聪明的小伙子。那工作是他自己要去做的吗 ?”

9 . “ 我儿子想回大学念书, ” 那屠夫用很轻微的声音告诉他说,“ 但是我供不起。” 他解释说他在中学毕业后为了积攒大学学费已经工作过两年。但是,在马尼托巴大学上了一年半后,他积攒的钱就全部用完了。生意艰难,尽管屠夫的妻子打了两份工,家里也只能是勉强度日。这孩子一个星期挣回来的 9 美元可是帮了家里大忙了。

10 . “ 告诉你儿子明天来见我。” 弗里德对屠夫说道。

11 . 第二天的晚上,在丘吉尔的公司完成了一天做搬运工和清洁的工作后,那个消瘦却结实的 20 来岁的年轻人

在弗里德工厂的办公室里见到了弗里德。

12. “你想回到大学继续学习吗?”弗里德问道。

13. “没有比这件事更想做的了。”年轻人回答说。

14. 弗里德直视着年轻人的眼睛说:“我要资助你念完大学。把你需要的数目写下来然后给我——包括学费、书本费,总之全部。”

15. 笑容在这孩子的脸上绽放,他不能相信这一切就在眼前。这个守护天使是从哪里冒出来的?

16. 第二天,年轻人把他列出的数字给弗里德看,这位制衣商仔细地看了一遍说道:“你就不为自己添置点什么吗?你不吃午餐或是不时理理发什么的?你还需要添些新衣服。把这些都加进去。”

17. 在弗里德把支票交给年轻人之前,对他说:“我这么做有几个条件。”

18. 这男孩安静地坐在那里,眼睛睁得大大的,充满了期待。

19. “首先,你不能告诉任何人这笔钱的来源。”男孩点点头。“第二,你必须保持顶尖的分数,我不是送你到大学里去当花花公子的。”

20. “第三,这是一笔贷款。在你有能力还贷的时候,你得全部还给我。最后,你必须承诺在你有生之年,也对别人做这样一件事。”弗里德先生,谢谢你。”这个 20 岁的年轻人答道,“我不会让你失望的。”

21. 每个月年轻人都到弗里德那里汇报他的进步。在马尼托巴大学里,他赢得了很高的学分,几乎是班上的最高分,还被选为学生会的主席。

22. 3 年过去了,马克斯·弗里德借给屠夫的儿子 900 美元。这个年轻的毕业生在毕业以后刚刚找到一份工作时,就开始还他的贷款了。毕业后第一年他送还弗里德 100 美元,第二年 100 美元,在第三年还清余款。

23. 他终生都没有忘记那一天,别人给予了他赢得成功的机会。他也没有忘记他要用同样的方法去帮助别人的诺言,帮助了几个年轻人完成高等教育。

24. 这个男孩向弗里德做出的其中一个承诺却没有能够兑现。有将近 30 年,他都没有向任何人透露他这位神秘恩人的身份。但最终他决定把他的故事讲述出来,因为他觉得这样可以激励其他人也去助人,因为他还感到虽然马克斯·弗里德不愿公开身份,但是他应该得到人们的认可。

25. 我经常讲述这个故事。它能提醒我记住,无论我们在生活中做什么,无论我们能在成功的阶梯上攀援多么高,我们终将因为帮助了运气不佳的人而被人们铭记于心。

26. 我喜欢这个故事还有一个原因:我就是那个屠夫的儿子。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 His mother, a loving, caring woman, was the one who held the family together.

【译文】 他的母亲是一位可爱而又非常关怀别人的妇女,是她把整个家庭凝聚在一起的。

【注释】 (1)代词 one 后面接动词不定式或定语从句时的意思是“那个人,那种人”。

【例句】 She is not *one* to bow before difficulties. 她不是在困难面前低头的那种人。

The officer is the *one* who gives orders. 军官就是发号施令的人。

【注释】 (2)hold together 的意思是“(使)团结一致,(使)保持完整”。

【例句】 The country needs a leader who will *hold* the nation *together*. 这个国家需要一位能使

全国团结一致的领袖。

The book is so old that it will not *hold together*. 这书太旧了,已经订不到一起了。

2. 【原文】 His father, ..., had firm beliefs that a person would never make a valuable contribution to the world unless they attended and graduated from college by the age of twenty-three .

【译文】 他的父亲.....坚信一个人如果在 23 岁之前没有大学毕业的话,就不可能对这个社会做出什么有价值的贡献。

【注释】 make a contribution to (sth .) 的意思是“对.....做出贡献”。

【例句】 They have *made* outstanding *contributions* to the cause of peace .他们对和平事业做出了杰出的贡献。

His company has *made* great *contributions* to development of computers .他的公司对计算机的发展做出巨大贡献。

3. 【原文】 His father had even paved the way for Jeff to attend the same college from which he graduated, and had offerde to pay Jeff 's entire tuition and living expenses .

【译文】 他父亲甚至为了杰夫可以进入他所毕业的大学而为他创造了许多条件,并且愿意负担杰夫上大学所需的学费和生活费。

【注释】 动词 pave 的意思是“铺(路),铺设”。

【例句】 The path is *paved* with concrete slabs .那条小路是用水泥板铺设的。

The town council decided to *pave* the square before the Hall .市议会决定铺设市政大厅前面的广场。

短语 pave the way for (sb / sth .) 的意思是“为.....铺平道路”。

【例句】 His economic policies *paved the way for* industrial expansion .他的经济政策为工业扩展铺平了道路。

He *paved the way for* me by doing careful work .他做了细致的工作,从而为我铺平了道路。

4. 【原文】 As an active Alumni Association member ,he was excited that his son would someday follow in his footsteps .

【译文】 作为那所大学校友会的积极成员,他非常热切地期望杰夫将来可以追随他的人生轨迹。

【注释】 (1)excited 后面的 that 从句表示原因。英语中某些表示情感的形容词后面可以接一个由 that 引导的从句表示原因(that 有时省略),常用的这种形容词有 afraid, annoyed, ashamed, content, delighted, disappointed, excited, glad, pleased, proud, satisfied, sorry, surprised 等。

【例句】 I 'm glad *that you have been assigned such a task* .我很高兴,给你分配了这样一项任务。

I am proud *that our country is forging ahead at such a speed* .祖国这样突飞猛进,我感到很骄傲。

He was sorry *that he had to leave* .他很遗憾,他不得不走了。

We are surprised *that he didn't come* .他没有来,我们很惊讶。

I am afraid *that you don't see my point* .恐怕你没有理解我的要点。

He felt ashamed *that he had done so little* .他因为自己做得太少而感到不好意思。

【注释】 (2)follow in sb.'s footsteps 的意思是“效法,走……的路”。

【例句】 The boy's *following in his father's footsteps* and studying to be a doctor .这个男孩走他父亲的路,正在学习医学准备当医生。

She works in a theatre, *following in her father's footsteps* .她继承父业,在一家剧院里工作。

5. **【原文】** When he graduated from high school he decided to decline his father's offer and instead move to Colorado to work with a ski patrol .

【译文】 他从中学毕业时就决定拒绝父亲的提议,而去科罗拉多州为一个滑雪巡逻队工作。

【注释】 动词 decline 的意思是“ (婉言)拒绝”。

【例句】 I invited her to join us, but she *declined* .我请她参加和我们一起活动,但她婉言拒绝了。

He *declined* to discuss his plans .他拒不讨论他的计划。

这个动词的另一个意思是“下降,缩小”。

【例句】 His influence *declined* after he lost the election .落选后,他的影响下降了。

Prices on the stock market *declined* .股市价格下跌了。

6. **【原文】** He told his father of his passion for skiing and for the mountains and then of his plans .

【译文】 他告诉父亲自己对滑雪和大山的热衷,以及他的种种计划。

【注释】 tell (sb.) of/about (sth.) 的意思是“和某人谈论某事”。

【例句】 I *told* him of the pleasure of reading .我和他谈到读书的乐趣。

He *told* me of/about his difficulties .他和我谈到他的困难。

7. **【原文】** His father looked off into the distance, his face became red, and his eyes squinted and bored into Jeff .

【译文】 他的父亲瞪视着远处,脸色绯红,眼睛眯成一条线,仿佛要把杰夫看透似的。

【注释】 动词 squint 的意思是“眯眼看”。

【例句】 The children *squinted* in the bright sunlight .孩子们在强烈的阳光下眯着眼。

She *squinted* through the letter-box and found no mail in it .她朝信箱里窥视,没有看到邮件。

8. **【原文】** Then came the words that still echoed in Jeff's mind: . . .

【译文】 接下来他说的话至今仍在杰夫的耳边回荡:

【注释】 动词 echo 的意思是“发回声”。

【例句】 The valley *echoed* back his song .他的歌声在山谷中回响。

Their shouts *echoed* in the forest .森林中传出他们喊声的回音。

9. **【原文】** I should have known you'd never amount to anything .

- 【译文】 我早就该明白你这么不成器。
- 【注释】 动词 amount 后面接介词 to,意思是“总计,共达”。
- 【例句】 The cost *amounted* to \$ 400 .成本达 400 美元。
Our information doesn't *amount* to much .我们得到的信息总共也不多。
这个动词的另一个意思是“等于,相当于”。
- 【例句】 It all *amounts* to a lot of hard work .这一切意味着大量艰苦的工作。
His words *amount* to a refusal .他的话等于是拒绝。
- 10 . 【原文】 He was doing this for himself,he said over and over,not for his father .
- 【译文】 他一遍又一遍地说,他做这些是为了他自己,而不是为了他父亲。
- 【注释】 短语 over and over (again) 的意思是“一再地,许多次”。
- 【例句】 I've point this out to you *over and over again* .我曾许多次向你指出这一点。
He repeated the story *over and over* .他一再地重复那个故事。
- 11 . 【原文】 She stayed in contact with their father, ...
- 【译文】 她和父亲还保持着联系,.....
- 【注释】 短语 in contact with 的意思是“与.....接触,与.....联系”。
- 【例句】 Our troops are *in contact with* the enemy .我们的部队已与敌军接触。
I've been intending to get *in contact with* you about a minor matter .我一直想同你联系一件小事情。
- 12 . 【原文】 His eyes sparkled and he smiled .
- 【译文】 他的眼睛闪着光亮,微笑着。
- 【注释】 动词 sparkle 的意思是“闪烁,闪闪发光”。
- 【例句】 The pavements *sparkled* with frost .人行道由于结霜而闪闪发光。
His eyes *sparkled* with excitement .他的眼睛由于兴奋而发亮。
在用于人的时候,这个动词的意思是“充满活力和机智”。
- 【例句】 She always *sparkles* at parties .在宴会上她总是生气勃勃、才智焕发。
He was really *sparkling* with happiness at the birthday party .在生日聚会上,他确实由于高兴而充满活力和机智。
- 13 . 【原文】 By the way, my name 's Dr . Holstrom .
- 【译文】 顺便说一下,我是霍尔斯特姆医生。
- 【注释】 短语 by the way 的意思是“顺便说一下”。
- 【例句】 What did you say your name was,*by the way* ?顺便问一下,你说你的名字叫什么?
I don't want to discuss that point at length .I just mentioned it *by the way* in case you were interested .我不想详细探讨这个问题;我不过附带提一下,说不定你感兴趣。
- 14 . 【原文】 I froze for a second .
- 【译文】 有那么一刻我僵住了。
- 【注释】 动词 freeze 的基本意思是“结冻,冰冻”。
- 【例句】 Water *freezes* at 0 .水在零摄氏度时结冰。

The land itself *freezes* in such low temperatures . 在这样的低温下, 土地本身就可冻硬。

这个动词在本句中的意思是“使呆住, 惊呆”。

【例句】 Ann *froze* with terror as the door opened silently . 门悄悄打开时, 安吓呆了。

The sudden bang *froze* us in our tracks . 突然砰地一声巨响当即把我们吓呆了。

15 . 【原文】 I turned round around in my chair to get a glimpse of Dr . Holstrom .

【译文】 我在椅子上转了个身, 瞥了一眼霍尔斯特姆医生。

【注释】 get/catch a glimpse of 的意思是“瞥见, 望见一眼”。

【例句】 When I left the hotel I *got a glimpse of* a man strolling past the window . 当我离开旅馆时, 我瞥见一个人漫步走过窗口。

I only *caught a glimpse of* the parcel, so I can't guess what was inside it . 我只是瞥了一眼那个包裹, 所以我无法猜出里面装的是什么。

16 . 【原文】 Jeff was the last person to cross the stage .

【译文】 最后一名从台上走过的人是杰夫。

【注释】 句末的 to cross the stage 是动词不定式作 the last person 的定语。当一个名词前面有 first, last, only 修饰时, 后面可以用不定式作定语。

【例句】 You will be the *first* person to speak . 你是第一个发言的人。

This is your *last* chance to do it . 这是你这样做的最后一次机会。

She says Italy is the *only* place to go for a holiday . 她说意大利是度假的最好地方。

17 . 【原文】 I heard his name being announced: . . .

【译文】 我听到他名字是这样宣布的:

【注释】 句中的 being announced 是现在分词的被动形式作 heard 的宾语补足语, 表示这两个动作同时发生。

【例句】 You'll find the topic *being discussed* everywhere . 你会发现到处都在讨论这个问题。

As we approached the village we saw new houses *being built* . 走近村子时我们看到正在盖新房。

He often watched the boats *being unloaded* . 他常常看轮船卸货。

18 . 【原文】 Dr . Holstrom opened his arms, as if to embrace the air around him .

【译文】 霍尔斯特姆医生张开双臂, 仿佛要拥抱他周围的空气。

【注释】 连词 as if/though 有时可以连接一个状语。

【例句】 He paused *as if* to let the painful memories pass . 他停顿了一下, 仿佛要让痛苦的回忆过去。

When she had finished she waited *as though* for a reply . 她讲完以后等待着, 仿佛期待着回答。

19 . 【原文】 He bowed his head, almost as if to apologize .

【译文】 他点着头, 好像是在道歉。

【注释】 动词 bow 的意思是“低(头), 使变弯”。

【例句】 The boy *bowed* his head in shame . 那个男孩羞愧地低下头。

Age had *bowed* his once straight back . 岁月使他那曾经笔直的背弯曲了。

The prevailing wind has *bowed* all the trees towards the east . 最常刮的风使所有的树都向西弯曲。

这个动词还有一个意思是“鞠躬”。

【例句】 The cast *bowed* as the audience applauded . 观众鼓掌时演员鞠躬致谢。

She *bowed* her thanks . 她鞠躬表示感谢。

此外,它也可以用作名词,意思是“点头或鞠躬(打招呼)”。

【例句】 He made a *bow* and left the room . 他鞠了一躬就离开了房间。

I acknowledged him with a *bow* . 我对他点头打招呼。

20 . 【原文】 For a moment it seemed as if time stood still, ...

【译文】 有一刻,仿佛时间都凝固了,.....

【注释】 句中的 *still* 是形容词,意思是“静止的,(几乎)不动的”。

【例句】 Please keep *still* while I take your photograph . 我给你拍照时不要动。

The room was so *still* that you could have heard a pin drop . 屋里安静得连针掉了都能听得见。

原句中的 *stand* 是系动词,关于其用法参见第一册第五单元的“语法告诉你”。

语法告诉你

It 的四种用法

1. 人称 it:

(1) 用于代替刚才提到的动物或东西:

“Where's your car?” “*It* is in the garage .” “你的汽车在哪儿?” 在车库里。”

Fill a glass with water and dissolve this tablet in *it* . 往玻璃杯里倒水,把这片药溶化在里面。

(2) 用于指婴儿(尤指性别不明或不重要的):

What a beautiful baby — is *it* a boy ? 多漂亮的婴儿啊——是男孩吗?

The baby next door kept me awake . *It* cried all night . 隔壁的婴儿让我睡不着觉。他(她)哭了整整一夜。

(3) 用于指已知的事实:

When the factory closes, *it* will mean 500 redundancies . 这家工厂倒闭时,将意味着 500 人失业。

You have saved my life; I shall never forget *it* . 你救了我的命,我永远不会忘记。

2. 无人称 it:

(1) 指时间:

It is ten past twelve . 现在是 12 点过 10 分。

It's long time since he left . 你离开已经很久了。

(2)指天气:

It was raining this morning . 今天上午一直下雨。

It's quite warm at the moment . 这一会儿天气相当暖和。

(3)指距离:

It is two miles to the beach . 这里到海滨有 2 英里。

How far is it from your office to the bank ? 从你的办公室到银行有多远 ?

(4)指环境、情况:

It was very quiet in the cafe . 咖啡馆里非常安静。

If it's convenient I can see you tomorrow . 如果方便,我明天能见你。

3. 强调 *it*: 通过 *it is ... that/ who* 句型强调除动词谓语以外的各个句子成分, 例如:

It is Jim who is the clever one . 真正聪明的人是吉姆。(强调主语)

It is a doctor that she wants to become . 她想当的是医生。(强调表语)

It is your passport that you should show as you pass the customs . 出关时你应该出示的是护照。(强调宾语)

It is Spain that they're going to on holiday . 他们打算去度假的地方是西班牙。(强调介词宾语)

It was three weeks later that he heard the news . 直到 3 周之后他才听到那个消息。(强调时间状语)

It was through countless practices that he made the discovery . 他是经过无数次的试验才做出了这一发明。(强调方式状语)

It is owing to this greenhouse effect that the earth is becoming warmer . 正是由于这种温室效应使得地球变暖。(强调原因状语)

4. 先行 *it*:

(1) 当主语是动词不定式或是从句时, 可以用 *it* 作先行词放在主语的位置而成为形式主语, 真正的主语则放在句子末尾, 例如:

It is impossible to get there in time . 不可能及时赶到那里。

(试比较: *To get there in time is impossible .*)

It's not your fault that this happened . 发生这样的事不是你的过错。

(试比较: *That this happened is not your fault .*)

有时当动名词作主语时也可以这样做:

It will be nice seeing them again . 能再次见到他们真是太好了。

It is no use sending him over . It's too late . 现在运送给他没有用了, 太迟了。

(2) 在复合宾语中, 如果宾语是动词不定式或是从句, 就要用 *it* 作先行词放在宾语的位置而成为形式宾语, 真正的主语则放在补足语之后, 例如:

She finds it boring to stay at home . 她觉得呆在家里厌烦得很。

At first I found it difficult to persevere . 开始我感到坚持下去很困难。

I remember I made *it* clear to you that I was not coming . 我记得我向你清楚表示过我不来。

I finds *it* strange that he doesn 't want to travel . 我对他不想旅行感到奇怪。

有时当动名词作宾语时也可以这样做:

They deemed *it* sheer waste of time arguing about *it* . 他们觉得争论这件事纯粹是浪费时间。

Do you consider *it* any good sending more people over ? 你觉得再多派一些人去有好处吗 ?

练习答案

Exercise 1

(open)

Exercise 2

1 . C 2 . A 3 . B 4 . D 5 . B

Exercise 3

1 . contribution 2 . association 3 . echoing 4 . passion
5 . congratulating 6 . resort 7 . apologized 8 . froze
9 . odd 10 . expense

Exercise 4

1 . pave the way for 2 . echoing in my mind 3 . amount to
4 . hold ... together 5 . bored into 6 . follow in his footsteps
7 . in contact with 8 . are supportive of

Exercise 5

1 . I took as much luggage as was allowed .
2 . German is as difficult a language as English .
3 . A year is as long a time as it takes for the earth to go round the sun once .
4 . Tom has made as many spelling mistakes in his compositions as Mary does in hers .
5 . We are going to have as hot a summer as we had last year .
6 . We have as efficient management of the school as they do .

参考译文

不同的回家

1. 这年我和杰夫有过很多次交谈,但是我永远不会忘记的是有一次他谈及他的家庭。他的母亲是一位可爱而又非常关怀别人的妇女,是她把整个家庭凝聚在一起的。而她在杰夫即将中学毕业时去世了。他的父亲是一位成功的内科医生,用杰夫的话来说他十分冷酷而又严厉。他坚信一个人如果在 23 岁之前没有大学毕业的话,就不可能对这个社会做出什么有价值的贡献。他父亲甚至为了杰夫可以进入他所毕业的大学而为他创造了许多条件,并且愿意负担杰夫上大学所需的学费和生活费。作为那所大学校友会的积极成员,他非常热切地期望杰夫将来可以追随他的人生轨迹。

2. 杰夫 27 岁,是《财富》公布的一家全美 500 强企业里成功的企划师——并没有大学文凭。他酷爱滑雪。他从中学毕业时就决定拒绝父亲的提议,而去科罗拉多州为一个滑雪巡逻队工作。他告诉我那天的事情时眼里充满了痛苦。他仍旧记得他告诉父亲他不去上大学而要在滑雪度假区找个工作的那一天的情景。他清楚地记得这场简短谈话的每个字。他告诉父亲自己对滑雪和大山的热衷,以及他的种种计划。他的父亲瞪视着远处,脸色绯红,眼睛眯成一条线,仿佛要把杰夫看透似的。接下来他说的话至今仍在杰夫的耳边回荡:“你这个懒鬼。我的儿子决不会不去上大学,去做什么滑雪巡逻员。我早就该明白你这么不成器。别再进这个屋子,除非你有了自尊,善用上帝赋予你的头脑去上大学!”自从这场谈话以后,这父子俩再也没有说过一句话。

3. 杰夫甚至不很肯定父亲是不是知道他已经回来,就离他从小长大的地方不远,当然他也不愿意父亲知道他在念大学。他一遍又一遍地说,他做这些是为了他自己,而不是为了他父亲。

4. 杰夫的妹妹贾尼斯一向都对杰夫的决定持支持态度。她和父亲还保持着联系,但是杰夫让她发誓不能向父亲透露有关他的生活情况。

5. 杰夫的毕业典礼是在 6 月的一个炎热夏日里。典礼之前,我四下与人交谈之时,注意到有个男子脸上显出十分困惑的表情。

6. “劳驾,”他礼貌地走上前来说道。“今天这有什么事情?”

7. “这是毕业典礼。”我面带微笑地回答。

8. “呃,这可有点怪,”他说。“我女儿让我到这个地址来见她。”他的眼睛闪着光亮,微笑着。“也许是她读完了副学士学位,想给我个惊喜吧!”

9. 我帮助他找了个座位,在他离开我的时候他说:“多谢帮忙。顺便说一下,我是霍尔斯特姆医生。”

10. 有那么一刻我僵住了。杰夫·霍尔斯特姆。霍尔斯特姆医生。这和我去年听到的故事有可能是一个人么?那个冷酷而又严厉的人,要自己的儿子上大学否则就再也不许进家门的人?

11. 很快,《庆典进行曲》那熟悉的旋律就响了起来。我在椅子上转了个身,瞥了一眼霍尔斯特姆医生。他好像正在台上的毕业生里寻找着女儿。台上作着报告,恭祝那些毕业生,然后系主任开始念毕业生的名字。

12. 最后一名从台上走过的人是杰夫。我听到他名字是这样宣布的:“杰夫·霍尔斯特姆,优等生。”他走过台子,从校长手中接过毕业证书,就在他走下台时,他转向观众寻找他的妹妹。

13. 从观众席后边站了起来一个高高的身影——霍尔斯特姆医生。我不知道杰夫是怎么从人群中看到他的,但是我能说他们的眼神相遇了。霍尔斯特姆医生张开双臂,仿佛要拥抱他周围的空气。他点着头,好像是在道歉。有一刻,仿佛时间都凝固了,又好似大厅里只有他们两个人。杰夫眼含热泪走下台阶。

14. “我父亲在这儿。”他轻声对我说。我微笑了。

15. “你打算怎么做?”我问他。

16. “呃，”他说。“我想我该回家了。”

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

1 . d 2 . f 3 . j 4 . o 5 . g 6 . e 7 . k 8 . l
9 . m 10 . n 11 . i 12 . b 13 . c 14 . p 15 . h 16 . a

Van Driver	Sales Clerk	<u>Secty/ Ofc</u> work for
<p>38-hr week with plenty of over-time, good wages . Req 'd to travel locally on light-weight pick-ups and deliveries . Write to Mr . Fletcher , 91-93 Melbourne St, W2</p>	<p>Preferably 16-28, foreign language ability an asset . Excellent prospects for promotion . Contact Ms K . Bouldin, Tel . 77413 References req 'd .</p>	<p>construction co . Position req 'd good command of English, bookkeeping & figure aptitude, thorough attention to details & follow-through organizational abilities . heavy phone & customer contact . \$ 930 ~ \$ 1 100 commensurate w/ expd . CV to the Burdick Group, 238 Montgomery St ., Sf 9411</p>

Practice 2

1 . three 2 . Brooklyn shop 3 . clerk 4 . 684-2550
5 . supervise production work

翻译实践

Practice 3

- 1 . 自动生产线最适用于汽车工业, 因为那里要生产成千上万个同样的零件。
- 2 . 物质具有一定的特征或特性, 因此我们可以很容易地加以区分。
- 3 . 尽管电子计算机有许多优点, 然而它不能进行创造性的工作, 也代替不了人。
- 4 . 我们必须给机器的运转部件加油, 从而大大减少摩擦。
- 5 . 由于电子计算机似乎起着人脑的作用, 所以常被称为电脑。

Practice 4

- 1 . 虽然我从1991年开始就没有再作为“我们来做笔交易”这个美国游戏节目的主持人出现在电视上, 但是没有一天

我不被人们认出来。

2. 在 1942 年一个乍暖还寒的春天早上,加拿大温尼伯市的一家衬衫制造公司——赫尔克里士服装制造公司——的老板马克斯·弗里德正赶回他的工厂,胳膊底下还夹着一大捆订单。
3. 它能提醒我记得,无论我们在生活中做什么,无论我们能在成功的阶梯上攀援多么高,我们终将因为帮助了运气不佳的人而被人们铭记于心。
4. 他的父亲是一位成功的内科医生,用杰夫的话来说他十分冷酷而又严厉。他坚信如果一个人在 23 岁之前没有大学毕业的话,就不可能对这个社会做出什么有价值的贡献。
5. 霍尔斯特姆医生张开双臂,仿佛要拥抱他周围的空气。他点着头,好像是在道歉。有一刻,仿佛时间都凝固了,又好似大厅里只有他们两个人。

Practice 5

1. Ever since he left home, not a day goes by that his parents do not worry about his safety .
2. Since he had been put through college by his high school teachers, he planned to do the same for other poor students .
3. Five years after graduating from university, he carved out a name for himself as a successful journalist .
4. He decided to follow his father 's footsteps to become a lawyer as his father had already paved the way for his success .
5. I should have known earlier that you would never amount to anything .

写作指导

Practice 6

The Impact of Television on Children

Many people are worried about what television has done to the children who have grown up watching it . For one thing, recent studies tend to show that TV stifles creative imagination . Some teachers feel that television has taken away the child 's ability to form mental pictures in his own mind, and as a result, children cannot understand a simple story without visual images . Secondly, too much TV too early tends to cause children to withdraw from real life at an early age . Therefore, they grow up to be spectators who respond to action rather than initiate it . The third area for concern is the serious complaint frequently made by elementary school teachers that children like to see all problems resolved in a short time — 30 or 60 minutes . Consequently, they are discouraged by any activity that requires perseverance, e .g . they exhibit a low tolerance for the frustrations of learning .

Practice 7

To Whom It May Concern ,

It is my pleasure to recommend Mr . X for graduate study in the field of International Business at your university .

I have taught him in a course in Business Accounting and in another in Socialist Economics . In both he did excellent work . He distinguished himself not only in the grades he earned but also in his ability to work independently . In dealing with his fellow students, he always showed his willingness to help others and earned their affection and respect . I believe he is qualified for graduate study in his chosen field . This, I recommend him without reservation, and will appreciate your assistance to his application with your admission and financial support .

Yours sincerely,

Lu Da, professor

Dean of Economics Department
Of Shanghai University

听 说**Part 会话实践****1. 听说练习参考译文****示例 1**

(一位秘书致电一家旅行社为经理订机票。)

职员:这里是 ABC 旅行社。我能为您效劳吗?

秘书:是的。我想订一张 5 月 5 号飞往北京的机票。

职员:那天有两班飞机,一个是 9:30 起飞,另一个是 10:30 起飞。

秘书:10:30 起飞的好一些。是为西蒙·怀特先生订的。

职员:一等舱还是经济舱?

秘书:经济舱吧。

职员:好的。感谢致电。再见。

示例 2

前台服务员:前台。我能为您效劳吗?

导游:我是 ABC 旅行社的李鸿。我想为我们社的游客订四个房间,从本周四至周六。

前台服务员:您希望订哪一种房间?

导游:三间带淋浴的单人间,一间带盆浴的双人间。

前台服务员:单人间每晚 150 元,双人间是 200 元。

导游:很好。

示例 3

女招待:下午好。这里是金桥餐馆。

李小姐:下午好。我想晚餐宴请几位美国朋友。请为我们预订个台子。

女招待:当然,您什么时间光临,需要预订的是几个人的台子?

李小姐:四个人,大概晚上8点到。

女招待:明白了。我这就为您订下来。请问您贵姓?

李小姐:我是运输公司的李燕。

女招待:感谢致电,再见。

李小姐:谢谢。

2.

Receptionist: Good morning, Eastern Hotel . Can I help you?

Miss Li: Good morning . This is Fashion Clothes Company . We want to reserve a conference room for a sales meeting .

Receptionist: Let me see . . . Well, the conference room will be available in the afternoon . Will that suit you ?

Miss Li: Fine . Can I make a reservation on it now ?

Receptionist: Sure . Thanks for calling . Bye .

Miss Li: Bye .

3.

Receptionist: Cherry Hotel . May I help you ?

Guest: I'd like to reserve a room.

Receptionist: What kind of room would you like, madam ?

Guest: A double room with bath and overlooking the sea.

Receptionist: For how many days ?

Guest: One week . How much is it ?

Receptionist: 120 yuan per night . The price covers breakfast .

Guest: OK . I'll book it.

Receptionist: May I have your name ?

Guest: Ms . Wang Fang.

Receptionist: All right . Ms . Wang . We look forward to seeing you here .

Guest: Thank you . Bye !

4.

1)

Clerk: Travel Agent . Good afternoon . Can I help you ?

Miss Wang: Yes . Can I make a reservation for a seat on the plane to Manchester ?

Clerk: Sure . What time, please ?

Miss Wang: On Monday, October 8th .

Clerk: Wait a second . Let me check on my computer . Well, there is a CAAC flight on Monday afternoon .

Miss Wang: When will it take off ?

Clerk: It takes off at 11:00 and the whole journey takes 10 hours . Will this flight be OK for you ?

Miss Wang: Yes, thank you . Please book a seat for me on this flight .

Clerk: May I have your name, madam ?

Miss Wang: Ms . Wang Yan . W-a-n-g as the surname, and Y-a-n as the first name .

Clerk: Thanks for calling, madam .

Miss Wang: Thank you .

2)

Clerk: Taxi Corporation . Can I help you ?

Mr . Peter Brown: Yes . I 'd like to book a taxi for tomorrow to the airport .

Clerk: OK . For when, please ?

Mr . Peter Brown: At half past nine .

Clerk: Where shall we pick you up ?

Mr . Peter Brown: I 'm staying at Room 806 , Golden Bridge Hotel . My name is Peter Brown .

Clerk: OK, Mr . Brown . Our guy will be there at 9: 25 , and the car number is 656898 . Thanks for calling . Good bye, Mr . Brown .

Mr . Peter Brown: Thank you .

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) D 2) C 3) B 4) A 5) A
6) D 7) B 8) C 9) C 10) B

对话原文:

1) W: I saw Tom at the hospital today . I wonder if his wife is ill .

M: No, she 's fine . His daughter just had a baby and he was visiting her .

Q: Why was Tom at the hospital ?

2) W: John, do you know when the meeting starts ?

M: Yes, it starts at 10 o 'clock . We still have 20 minutes to wait .

Q: What time is it now ?

3) M: I was hoping that we would see George here today .

W: He was planning to come, but then his wife 's father was ill and they had to take him to hospital .

Q: Who was ill ?

4) M: You 're going to Beijing this weekend , aren 't you ?

W: Yes, I thought I 'd fly, but then I 've decided that taking a train would be cheaper than driving or flying .

Q: How will the woman go to Beijing ?

5) M: Is George seriously injured in the traffic accident ?

W: I 'm afraid he is, but his parents are kept from the news .

Q: What do we learn from the conversation ?

6) M: Hello, Mrs . Smith . This is John Brown . May I speak to my wife now ?

W: Sorry, she is not here . She is in the lab now and then she 's going to the library . I 'll tell her to call you at home when she is back .

Q: Where is the man 's wife now ?

7) W: If you give me a hand, I could finish this job before four o 'clock this afternoon .

M: I would like to, but Mr . George told me to type some letters this afternoon .

Q: What will the man probably do ?

8) M: Is there anything more to do before we go ?

W: I can 't think of anything else . I 've cleaned out the refrigerator and finished packing our clothes . You

might telephone for a taxi while I lock the suitcases .

Q: What will the man probably do ?

9) M: How long does it take to drive across Shanghai ?

W: Well, that depends on the traffic . If the roads aren 't too busy ,you can do it in about an hour . But if you go during the rush hour ,then of course it can take one or two more hours .

Q: How long does it take to drive across Shanghai during the rush hour ?

10) M: I wonder if I could borrow your English-Chinese Dictionary, please ?

W: You certainly could if I had one ,but I gave it to my brother when he entered the university ,and I have not bought another one yet .

Q: What does the woman mean ?

B .

1 .

Question 1): What is the purpose of the letter ?

Answer: To confirm the reservation and express welcome.

Question 2): What makes the manager sure that the Whites will be satisfied ?

Answer: The manager has prepared a room that is even nicer than the one they stayed in last time.

2 . 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) F 6) F

短文原文:

Dear Mr . White ,

We were very glad to know that you and your wife will pay another visit to our city next week and would like to stay in our hotel .

We have pleasure in confirming the reservation . We 'll provide you with a double room with bath . The room overlooks a beautiful garden in Xinghai Park . It 's even nicer than the one you stayed in last time . I 'm sure you will be satisfied .

The cost of the room is 200 yuan(RMB) per night . This price covers breakfast .

We are looking forward to seeing you soon .

Yours faithfully,

Chang Fang

Manager of Xinghai Hotel

3 .

I have a friend in England . His 1) name is Ken Smith . I know him very 2) well ,but I have never met him . We 3) often write to each other . My letters are very 4) short . It is still hard for me to write in 5) English . I received a letter from Ken 6) yesterday . It made me very happy . He is coming to my 7) country for a holiday next month . I 'm going to 8) book a room for him in a hotel near my 9) home . We are looking forward to our 10) first meeting .

4 . 1) D 2) C 3) D

短文原文:

Nobody knows who first invented the umbrella ,but it was used in very ancient times . Probably the first to use it were the Chinese ,in the eleventh century B .C .

We know that the umbrella was used in ancient Egypt and Babylon as a sunshade . And there was a strange thing connected with its use: it became a sign of honor . In the Far East in ancient times ,the umbrella was allowed to be used on by those in high office .

In Europe, the Greeks were the first to use the umbrella as a sunshade .

And the umbrella was in common use in ancient Greece . But it is believed that the first persons in Europe to use the umbrella as protection against the rain were the ancient Romans .

By the eighteenth century, the umbrella was used against rain throughout most Europe . Umbrellas had not changed much in style during all this time, though they have become much lighter in weight . It wasn 't until the twentieth century that women 's umbrellas began to be made, in a whole variety of colors .

Questions :

- 1) Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage ?
- 2) According to the passage, who were the first to use the umbrella as protections against rain in Europe ?
- 3) When did women 's umbrella begin to appear ?



Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Asked recently why the British spend less lavishly on luxuries than the Italians or the French, Philippe Leopold-Metzger, . . . , had a ready reply: Houses prices and school fees .

【译文】 菲利普·利奥波德梅茨格……当他被问及为什么英国人在奢侈消费上逊于意大利人和法国人的时候,他早已有了答案:由于房产价格和学校费用。

【注释】 句首的 asked 是过去分词,相当于 when he was asked,一直到第一个逗号是分词短语作状语。过去分词作状语时大多数情况下都有被动的意思。

【例句】 *Seen from the hill*, the city looks magnificent . 从山上看这座城市非常壮观。

Weakened by successive storms, the bridge was no longer safe . 连续的暴雨使桥身受损,这座桥已经不再安全。

Greatly interested, I asked how he played these new works . 大感兴趣之下,我问他是如何演奏这些新作品的。
有时单独的过去分词也可以作状语。

【例句】 *Depressed*, he went to see his elder sister . 情绪低沉时,他就去看他的姐姐。

“ She ’s right , ” he said , *pleased* . 他高兴地说:“ 她是对的。”
关于分词的用法参见第二册第四单元的“ 语法告诉你 ”。

2. 【原文】 Over the past decade, school fees have consistently outstripped the British rate of inflation .

- 【译文】 在过去的 10 年中, 学校费用的上涨一直高于英国的通货膨胀率。
- 【注释】 动词 *outstrip* 的意思是“ (赛跑中) 超越, 超过”。
- 【例句】 We soon *outstripped* the slower runners . 我们很快超过了跑得比较慢的人。
Demand is *outstripping* current production . 需求正在超过现在的生产。
- 3 . 【原文】 British private schools, known confusingly as “ public schools ”, attract pupils from around the world .
- 【译文】 英国的私立学校被误称为是“ 公立学校 ”, 吸引了全世界各地的学生。
- 【注释】 be known as 的意思是“ 被称为, 大家公认是 ”。
- 【例句】 She was well known as an excellent dancer . 大家公认她是一位优秀的舞蹈家。
This area is known as “ Cornish Riviera . ” 这一地区被称作“ 科尼什 ”海滨休养区。
- 4 . 【原文】 Well over a century after the Duke of Wellington asserted that the Battle of Waterloo was won on the playing fields of Eton, British schools retain their reputation for offering a first — class education .
- 【译文】 当年, 惠灵顿公爵宣称滑铁卢战役是在伊顿的操场上赢得的, 此后的一个多世纪以来, 英国的学校就一直保持着其声望, 它们可以提供一流的教育。
- 【注释】 (1) 副词 *well* 在这里的意思是“ 颇, 甚 ”。
- 【例句】 I don 't know how old he is, but he looks *well over* past forty . 我不知道他有多大岁数, 但他看上去已有 40 好几了。
Temperatures are *well up* in the forties . 温度已大大超过了 40 度。
- 【注释】 (2) the Battle of Waterloo: 滑铁卢战役。滑铁卢位于比利时南部, 1815 年 6 月 18 日, 拿破仑的军队在此被英国公爵惠灵顿和普鲁士公爵布吕歇尔率领的军队打败, 从而最终地结束了拿破仑的政治生涯和军事生涯, 拿破仑时代宣告结束。
- 5 . 【原文】 ... they cannot charge more than the market can bear, ...
- 【译文】 他们收取的费用不能够高于市场承受力,
- 【注释】 动词 *charge* 在这里的意思是“ 收费, 索价 ”, 常与介词 *for* 连用。
- 【例句】 How much do you *charge for* mending shoes ? 你补一双鞋收多少钱 ?
As long as you 've paid in advance we won 't *charge you for* delivery . 只要你预付了款, 我们将免费送货。
这个动词的另一个意思是“ 指控 ”, 常与介词 *with* 连用。
- 【例句】 She *charged me with* neglecting my duty . 她指控我失职。
The police *charge him with* speeding . 警察指控他超速驾车。
- 6 . 【原文】 But the resilience of the market may owe more to the willingness of parents to make huge sacrifices for their children 's education than to the forbearance of school in raising fees .
- 【译文】 但是市场的反弹也许应该更多地归咎于家长情愿为孩子的教育做出巨大的牺牲, 而不是校方在提高费用方面所保持的自制力。
- 【注释】 短语 *make a sacrifice for* 的意思是“ 为.....做出牺牲 ”。

- 【例句】 They are always ready to *make every sacrifice for* the cause of national liberation . 他们随时准备为民族解放事业牺牲自己的一切。
Her parents *made many sacrifices for* her higher education . 为使她能上大学, 她的父母亲做了很多牺牲。
- 7 . 【原文】 In Britain, unlike the United States, university students cover most of their higher-education expenses through government grants .
【译文】 与美国不同, 英国大学生接受高等教育的绝大部分费用来源于政府的补贴。
【注释】 动词 cover 在这里的意思是“ 够付(费用) ”。
【例句】 \$ 20 will *cover* our petrol for the journey . 20 美元足够我们这次旅行的汽油费。
Here is \$ 10, that should *cover* all your expenses . 这是 10 美元, 应该够支付你的全部费用。
- 8 . 【原文】 But grants have not kept pace with inflation . . .
【译文】 而这种补贴与通货膨胀却不相匹配,
【注释】 短语 keep pace with 的意思是“ 跟上, 与 齐步前进 ”。
【例句】 We must *keep pace with* the new development of modern scientific research . 我们必须跟上现代科学研究的发展。
It is important for a firm to *keep pace with* changes in the market . 要跟上市场的变化, 这对一个公司来说是很重要的。
- 9 . 【原文】 Parents with the foresight to plan 10 years in advance should invest on a monthly basis in a series of endowment policies, suggests Isis .
【译文】 独立学校信息部建议, 有远见提前 10 年安排的家长, 应当按月连续投保。
【注释】 (1) 短语 in advance 的意思是“ 提前, 预先 ”。
【例句】 The rent must be paid *in advance* . 房租必须预交。
It 's impossible to know *in advance* what will happen . 不可能事先知道会有什么事发生。
【注释】 (2) on a . . . basis 的意思是“ 以 为基础(或根据) ”。
【例句】 Rates of work are calculated *on a weekly basis* . 工作量按周计算。
The problems are going to be settled *on a realistic basis* . 这些问题将以现实主义的态度解决。
【注释】 (3) 名词 policy 在这里的意思是“ 保单 ”, 例如: fire insurance policy (火险保险单), life insurance policy (人身保险单), comprehensive policy (综合保险单), family expense policy (家庭意外费用保险单), floater policy (流动资产保险单), open policy (不定额保险单)等。
- 10 . 【原文】 A policy will mature in each year the child is at school .
【译文】 孩子在校期间每年都有一份保单到期。
【注释】 动词 mature 的意思是“ (使)成熟 ”。
【例句】 These apples are *maturing* fast . 这些苹果正在很快地成熟。

Her character *matured* during these years . 在这些年月里她的性格发展成熟了。
在原句中这个动词的意思是“ (保险单)到期 ”。

11 . 【原文】 The benefits from these policies will usually be exempt from personal income and capital-gains tax, unless they are discontinued .

【译文】 这类保单的好处就是通常可以免缴个人所得税和增值税, 除非投保中断。

【注释】 形容词 exempt 的意思是“ 可免除……的 ”, 后面接介词 from。

【例句】 Children under 16 are *exempt from* prescription charges . 16 岁以下儿童免付药费。
School property is *exempt from* all taxes . 学校财产免征各种赋税。
这个词用作动词时的意思是“ 免除 ”, 后面接介词 from。

【例句】 The school *exempts* good pupils *from* examination . 该校对优秀学生免试。

Poor eyesight will *exempt* you *from* military services . 视力不好可以使你免服兵役。

12 . 【原文】 A lump sum put down four years in advance could reduce fees by as much as 50 per cent .

【译文】 据独立学校信息部称, “ 如果在 4 年之前就缴纳费用, 折扣可以达到 50% 。”

【注释】 介词 by 在这里表示增减程度等。

【例句】 Industrial production rose *by* nearly two-thirds in the past three years . 最近三年工业生产增长了将近三分之一。

The price fell *by* 10 per cent . 价格下跌了 10% 。

We lost the match *by* one goal . 我们以一球之差输了这场比赛。

13 . 【原文】 ... others turn to grandparents for help ...

【译文】 其他的人去向祖父母寻求帮助,

【注释】 turn to (sb .) for (sth .) 的意思是“ 向某人求(助) ”。

【例句】 He *turned to* his uncle *for* assistance . 他向他叔叔求助。

The child *turned to* its mother *for* comfort . 那孩子向母亲寻求安慰。

14 . 【原文】 ... and some arrange for school fees to be paid out of loans secured on their property .

【译文】 还有一些用他们的财产作抵押贷款来负担学校的费用。

【注释】 动词 secure 的意思是“ 获得, 得到 ”。

【例句】 We 'll need to *secure* a bank loan . 我们需要获得银行贷款。

They 've *secured* the government backing for the project . 他们获得了政府对该项目计划的支持。

这个动词的另一个意思是“ 固定, 保护 ”。

【例句】 *Secure* all the doors and windows before leaving . 离家前要把门窗关紧。

The new law will *secure* the civil rights of the mentally ill . 这一新法律将保护精神病患者的公民权。

在原句中 secure 指“ 担保, 保险 ”, 例如 a fully secured loan (有十足担保的借款), secure oneself against accidents (投保人身意外险)。

词汇精华

assert vt.

1. 声称, 断言
- 【例句】 She *asserted* her innocence/ that she was innocent .
- 【译文】 她声称她是无辜的。
- 【例句】 The old man *asserts* that eating garlic prevents rheumatism .
- 【译文】 那位老人声称吃蒜能防止关节炎。
2. 维护
- 【例句】 He *asserted* his right to share in the money .
- 【译文】 他坚持主张他有权分得那笔钱。
- 【例句】 You are too timid — you must try to *assert* yourself more .
- 【译文】 你太胆怯了——你必须设法更加坚持自己的主张。

assertion n. 断言; 维护

retain v.

1. 保持, 保留
- 【例句】 China dishes *retain* heat longer than metal pans do .
- 【译文】 磁盘子保留热量比金属锅长久。
- 【例句】 Despite losing his job he *retains* his pension .
- 【译文】 尽管失业, 他仍领养老金。
2. 记住, 记得
- 【例句】 She *retains* a clear impression of the incident .
- 【译文】 她对那次事件的印象仍很清楚。
- 【例句】 Concentrated study will help you to *retain* knowledge .
- 【译文】 全神贯注的学习能帮助你记住所学的知识。
3. 容纳, 挡住
- 【例句】 Clay soil *retains* water .
- 【译文】 黏土能保持水分。
- 【例句】 A dyke was built to *retain* the floods .
- 【译文】 为了挡住洪水修筑了一座堤坝。

retainer n. 保留房租

invest vt.

1. 投资(in)
- 【例句】 The best time to *invest* is now .
- 【译文】 现在是最佳投资时机。
- 【例句】 He *invested* \$ 5,000 in a growing business .
- 【译文】 他把 5 000 美元投资到一家正在发展中的公司。
2. 投入(时间、精力)(in)
- 【例句】 Everyone should *invest* some time in community service .
- 【译文】 每个人都应该在社区服务上投入一部分精力。
- 【例句】 They *invested* all their efforts in passing the exam .
- 【译文】 他们把自己的全部精力用于通过考试。
3. 购买(贵重而有用的东西)(in)
- 【例句】 The student decided to *invest* his entire fortune (\$ 100 !) in an old car .
- 【译文】 那个学生决定用他的全部财产(100 美元 !)买一辆旧汽车。

【例句】 It 's about time I *invest* in a new computer .

【译文】 我该买一台新计算机了。

4 . 授予(权力、称号、职务)(with, as)

【例句】 The government *invested* him *with* special powers to deal with the situation .

【译文】 政府授予他特别权力处理局势。

【例句】 Prince Charles was *invested as* Prince of Wales in 1969 .

【译文】 1969 年查尔斯王子被封为威尔士亲王。

5 . 使具有某特点(with)

【例句】 The singer *invested* her songs *with* a bittersweet sadness .

【译文】 那位歌手使她的歌曲带有一种又苦又甜的忧伤。

【例句】 The old ruins were *invested* with romance .

【译文】 古老的废墟笼罩着浪漫的色彩。

investment *n.* 投资

estimate *vt.*

1 . 估计

【例句】 We *estimated* his income at about \$ 16,000 a year .

【译文】 我们估计他每年收入约为 16 000 美元。

【例句】 She *estimated* that the work would take three months .

【译文】 她估计那项工作需要三个月。

2 . estimate for 为.....估计费用

【例句】 We asked our builder to *estimate for* the repair of the ceiling .

【译文】 我们请施工人员估计一下修理天花板需要多少钱。

【例句】 Ask a contractor to *estimate for* the repair of the building .

【译文】 让承建人估计修缮这座楼的费用。

estimate *n.* 估计;估价

account *v.*

1 . 认为

【例句】 In English law a man is *accounted* innocent until he is proved guilty .

【译文】 根据英国法律,一个人被证实有罪之前是清白的。

【例句】 He *accounted* himself lucky to be alive .

【译文】 他认为他能活着是很幸运的。

2 . account for 解释,说明

【例句】 His illness *accounts for* his absence .

【译文】 他因有病,所以缺席。

【例句】 Late frosts *accounted for* the poor fruit-crop .

【译文】 晚霜是水果歉收的原因。

3 . account to sb . for sth . 报账

【例句】 We must *accounts to* our employer *for* every cent we spend during a business trip .

【译文】 我们必须向雇主报账,说明出差期间每一分的支出细节。

account *n.* 帐目,帐户;叙述

owe *vt.*

1 . 欠,负债

【例句】 What do I *owe* you for that book ?

【译文】 买这本书我欠你多少钱？

【例句】 I *owe* her a great deal .

【译文】 我欠她很多人情债。

2 . 把.....归功于,把.....归因于

【例句】 He *owes* his success more to ability than to luck .

【译文】 他认为自己的成功更多是凭能力,而不是靠运气。

【例句】 We *owe* the general theory of relativity to Einstein .

【译文】 我们认为广义相对论的发现应归功于爱因斯坦。

3 . 感激

【例句】 I *owe* my teachers and parents a great deal .

【译文】 我万分感激老师和父母。

4 . 应当给予

【例句】 You *owe* me an apology .

【译文】 你应当向我道歉。

【例句】 We *owe* loyalty to our country .

【译文】 我们应当忠于祖国。

owing to prep. 因为,由于

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . (open)

2 . (open)

Exercise 2

1 . The British cut down their expenses on luxuries because house prices and school fees rise .

2 . The author mentions British private school as an example of rising school fees .

3 . The possible cause of the market resilience is that parents are willing to make huge sacrifices for their children 's education .

4 . The British government argues that students and their families should bear more of the load .

5 . The parents with advanced plans may invest on a monthly basis in a series of endowment policies, or invest lump sums to cut fees through band savings or investment trusts . The parents who haven 't saved in advance have fewer options; they may have to pay fees directly out of their income or to secure loans on their property .

Exercise 3

1 . T 2 . F 3 . F 4 . T 5 . T

Exercise 4

Types of Parents	Investment Methods	Benefits
With a 10-year-plan in advance	invest on a monthly basis in a series of endowment policies	exempt from personal income and capitalgains tax
With a lump sum	through band savings or investment trusts	cut fees by as much as two-thirds
With a capital sum	invest in an educational trust	tax-free
With no savings plans in advance	fewer options to have	no benefits

Exercise 5

- 1 . 1) 2) 3) 4)
 2 . 1) 2) 3) 4) v .
 3 . 1) v . 2) v . 3) v . 4) a .

Exercise 6

- 1 . transferred 2 . estimate 3 . secured 4 . senior
 5 . reputation 6 . retain 7 . matured 8 . load
 9 . financed 10 . entry

Exercise 7

- 1 . a series of 2 . account for 3 . keep pace with 4 . in advance
 5 . owes ... to 6 . put down 7 . investing ... in 8 . turn to

Exercise 8

- 1 . A 2 . A 3 . D 4 . C 5 . B
 6 . C 7 . B 8 . A 9 . C 10 . B
 11 . D 12 . A 13 . C 14 . B 15 . D
 16 . A 17 . A 18 . D 19 . C 20 . B

Exercise 9

- 1 . Tell me immediately you have any news .
 2 . Directly I walked in the door I smelt smoke .
 3 . Let me know the minute you hear from him .

- 4 . Telephone me the moment you get the result .
 5 . I loved you the instant (that) I saw you .
 6 . I opened the letter immediately I got home .
 7 . The minute I saw him I knew something was wrong .
 8 . I 'll send the ticket the moment I get the money .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是熟悉某些时间状语从句的连词。时间状语从句连词除了常用的 when, as, while, before, after, as soon as, until, till, since, once 以外, 还有下列一些:

(1) 表示“一……就……”的有 the moment, the minute, the instant, immediately, directly, instantly, 例如:

I recognized her *immediately* I saw her . 我一见面就认出了她。

I went home *directly* I had finished work . 我一干完活就回家了。

I want to see him *the minute* (that) he arrives . 他一到我就想见他。

He felt a thrill *the moment* he got into the theatre . 他一走进剧场就感到十分激动。

Tell me *instantly* he arrives . 他一到就告诉我。

He came *the instant* I called his name . 我一叫他的名字他就来了。

(2) 表示“每当, 每次”的有 every time, each time, 例如:

Every time he phones I always seem to be having lunch . 每次他来电话时, 我似乎都在吃午饭。

Each time I catch a cold, I have pain in my back . 每当我感冒时, 我的背就会痛。

(3) 表示“下一次”的有 next time, 例如:

You ought to come to see us *next time* you are home . 下次回家你要来看我们。

Next time you come again the building will have been completed . 你下次再来的时候, 这座楼就完工了。

(4) 此外, 表示“刚一……就……”的意思还可以用 scarcely ... when, hardly ... when 和 no sooner than, 例如:

Scarcely had she entered the room *when* the phone rang . 她刚一进屋, 电话就响了起来。

We had *hardly* begun to walk *when* it began to rain . 我们刚开始散步就下起雨来。

No sooner had he arrived *than* he was asked to leave again . 他刚一到达, 就又让他离去了。

Exercise 10

- 1 . needn 't have booked
- 2 . should have booked
- 3 . didn 't need to get
- 4 . shouldn 't have borrowed
- 5 . needn 't to get
- 6 . shouldn 't have been driving

参考译文

英国学校的费用也在上涨

1 . 菲利普·利奥波德梅茨格是法国卡地亚珠宝行在伦敦的负责人, 当他被问及为什么英国人在奢侈消费上逊于意大利人和法国人的时候, 他早已有了答案: 由于房产价格和学校费用。

2. 在英国的东南部地区,近些年来房产价格迅速滑落,但是学校的费用却在持续上涨。在过去的10年中,学校费用的上涨一直高于英国的通货膨胀率。

3. 这对于英国的家长们来说,并不仅仅是个坏消息的问题。英国的私立学校被误称为是“公立学校”,吸引了世界各地的学生。一部分原因是出于英国语言本身,而更为重要的是凭借着学校的声望。当年,惠灵顿公爵宣称滑铁卢战役是在伊顿的操场上赢得的,此后的一个多世纪以来,英国的学校就一直保持着其声望,它们可以提供一流的教育。

4. 但是在英国个人教育一个孩子是不便宜的。据伦敦当地的独立学校信息部的数字,高中寄宿学校一年的费用高达12 000英镑(合18 000美元)。而即使是增长率缓慢,这些费用还在持续增长。

5. 信息服务部的副总监理查德·戴维森说,寄宿学校和走读学校的平均费用在1993年9月截止的学年中上涨了4个百分点,而前一年学费增长了8.5%,前两年的增长率均超过12%。他还说估计今年的增长率在3个百分点左右。

6. “现在学校费用的增长率较为缓慢是由于校方也已经明白他们收取的费用不能够高于市场承受力,”戴维森先生说道。但是市场的反弹也许应该更多地归咎于家长情愿为孩子的教育做出巨大的牺牲,而不是校方在提高费用方面所保持的自制力。

7. 金融顾问们称,英国的家长们也已开始为大学教育的花费担忧了。与美国不同,英国的大学生接受高等教育绝大部分费用来源于政府的补贴。而这种补贴与通货膨胀却不相匹配,加之英国政府的部长们一直争辩说,学生和他们的家庭应该比现在负担的更多。

8. 那么在英国,家长们怎么来负担私立学校的教育费用呢?据独立学校信息部最近的调查显示,只有三成的家长预先作好了计划。大部分的家长是尽力地直接用他们的薪金和其他个人收入来支付的。但是随着费用的上涨,这样的做法正在变得越来越困难,各家也开始懂得做一些计划十分必要了。

9. 独立学校信息部建议,有远见提前10年安排的家长,应当按月连续投保。孩子在校期间每年都有一份保单到期。这类保单的好处就是通常可以免缴个人所得税和增值税,除非投保中断。

10. 一次性投保的家长尤其幸运。据独立学校信息部称,这些家长通过银行的储蓄或者投资信托公司可以减少三分之二的费用。也可以向教育信托公司投资一笔整存整取的款项,这样的存款目前在英国是免税的,抑或可以向一所学校预先付费。后一种做法,被称之为综合学费,可以使以后收费时打折。

11. “在学生入学的时候,一次性交齐或部分缴纳可能产生的费用,可以享受15%的折扣。”据独立学校信息部称,“如果在4年之前就缴纳费用,折扣可以达到50%。”

12. 戴维森先生告诫说,教育信托基金和这种综合支付在家长决定转学或离境的时候会很难将其转走。他说:“如果你的计划有所改变,大多数的方案还是可以做到按照你的要求使用这笔钱的。”

13. 而那些没有提前做好储备的家长们选择性就少得多了。大多数是想直接用他们的收入来支付学费,其他的人去向祖父母寻求帮助,还有一些用他们的财产作抵押贷款来负担学校的费用。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 On hearing the budget announcement the student grants were to be cut by ten percent, Acting University Secretary John Halstead and Students' Union General Secretary, Emily Lomax issued the following statement .

【译文】 学校代理秘书约翰·霍尔斯特德和学生会秘书长埃米莉·洛马克斯在听到宣布学生的助学金的预算要削减 10 个百分点后,立即发表了一个联合声明,内容如下。

【注释】 (1)介词 on 与动名词连用时的意思是“刚一……(就)”。

【例句】 *On arriving home I discovered the burglary.* 我刚一到家就发现家里被盗了。

I shall write to Mr. Watt on hearing from you. 我一听到你的消息就立即给瓦特先生写信。

【注释】 (2)动词 issue 的意思是“发表”。

【例句】 *The minister issued a statement to the press.* 部长向新闻界发表了谈话。

A joint communique was issued on May 20. 联合公报于 5 月 20 日发表。

2. 【原文】 *The proposed ten per cent cut in grants and corresponding increase in student debt will make many question the value of coming to university at all.*

【译文】 提议中的削减 10% 的助学贷款和学生负债相应的上涨会使上大学本身的价值产生疑问。

【注释】 (1)这里的 question 是动词,意思是“对……感到怀疑”。

【例句】 *Her sincerity has never been questioned.* 她的诚意从未被怀疑过。

I seriously question whether we ought to continue. 我很怀疑我们是否应该继续下去。

【注释】 (2)短语 at all 在否定句中的意思是“完全,丝毫”。

【例句】 *It makes no sense at all.* 这毫无意义。

Water is not at all like oxygen because their molecules are different. 水完全不像氧,因为水和氧的分子不同。

at all 用在疑问句及条件句中的意思是“究竟,果然,当真”。

【例句】 *You must know it if you know anything at all.* 如果你当真知情的话,你就应该知道此事。

I want to know how long she's been there. I want to know what she's there at all for. 我要知道她在那里呆多久了,我要知道她究竟为什么呆在那里。

Are you at all worried about the forecast? 对那项预测,你究竟担心不担心?

3. 【原文】 *It comes at a time when students can rarely obtain vacation work to supplement their grants nor find work when they graduate.*

【译文】 而这恰恰发生在大学生在假期找不到工作来贴助学金,以及他们毕业后无法找到工作的时候。

【注释】 (1)动词 obtain 的意思是“取得,获得”。

【例句】 *He always manages to obtain what he wants.* 他总能弄到他想要的。

I obtained this record for you with difficulty. 我好不容易才给你弄到这张唱片。

【注释】 (2)动词 supplement 的意思是“弥补”。

【例句】 *I supplement my grant by working in the evening.* 为了弥补助学金的不足,我晚上去打工。

She *supplements* her diet with vitamin tablets . 她服用维生素片来弥补医生为她规定的饮食。

4 . 【原文】 Of students ' total income (grant and loan) of £ 3,155 next session, 35% will be loan compared with this session 's £ 3,065 of which 26% is loan .

【译文】 下个学期, 学生的总计收入(助学金加上一般贷款)为 3 155 英镑, 35% 是一般性贷款, 而本学期是 3 065 英镑, 贷款为 26%。

【注释】 compared with (sb / sth .) 的意思是“和……比起来”。

【例句】 *Compared with him* I am a bungler . 和他比起来, 我是一个手艺拙劣的人。

Overall industrial production was up by 9 per cent *compared with* 1960 . 和 1960 年相比, 工业总产量增长了 9%。

5 . 【原文】 But many graduates have to take work which does not fully utilize their training .

【译文】 但是许多大学毕业生还是无法找到学以致用用的工作。

【注释】 动词 utilize 的意思是“利用”。

【例句】 To avoid an oil shortage more machines must *utilize* solar energy . 为了避免石油短缺, 必须有更多的机器利用太阳能。

The extra money is being *utilized* to buy books for the school library . 多余的钱正在用来给学校的图书馆购置图书。

6 . 【原文】 For example, six of our recent graduates have taken up full-time employment in the restaurant, bar and reception area of one local hotel .

【译文】 例如, 有 6 名新近毕业的学生找到的全职工作就是在当地的宾馆做餐厅、酒吧和前台的服务员。

【注释】 短语动词 take up 是个多义词, 主要词义如下。

(1) 开始学习(某课程), 选修

【例句】 You know I dropped medicine and *took up* physics ? 你知道吗, 我放弃了医学, 改学物理了 ?

I *took up* mathematics, shorthand and economics . 我选修数学、速记和经济学。

(2) 从事某项活动, 发展某种爱好

【例句】 She has *taken up* the oboe . 她开始练习吹双簧管。

Some old people are going to *take up* gardening when they retire . 有些老年人在退休后打算从事园艺。

(3) 开始做, 从事

【例句】 She has *taken up* a job as a teacher . 她开始从事教师工作。

He *takes his duty up* next week . 下星期他开始上班工作。

(4) 占据(时间或空间)

【例句】 This table *takes up* too much room . 这张桌子太占地方。

Her time is fully *taken up* with writing . 她的时间全都花在写作上了。

(5) 提出(问题)以供讨论

【例句】 I'd like to *take up* the point you raised earlier . 我想讨论一下你早先提过的论点。
That 's the issue we ought to *take up* at the next meeting . 这是我们应该在下次会议上提出讨论的问题。

(6) 继续(讲述)

【例句】 The chapter *takes up* where the last left off . 这一章是接着上一章结束的地方继续进行的。

The teacher *takes up* the lesson at the outbreak of war in 1939 . 老师接着从1939年战争爆发时继续往下讲课。

(7) 接受, 采取

【例句】 Our troops *took up* defensive positions on high ground overlooking the river . 我们的部队在俯瞰江面的高地上采取了守势。

Do you intend to *take up* his offer of a job ? 你打算接受他提供给你的工作吗 ?

(8) 吸起, 拿起

【例句】 Blotting paper *takes up* ink . 吸墨纸吸收墨水渍。

The carpet had to be *takes up* when the house was rewired . 重换房子的电线时, 地毯不得不卷了起来。

7 . **【原文】** Particularly hard hit will be mature students and students whose parents are out of work and unable to supplement the students ' income .

【译文】 对于那些成年的学生和父母没有工作而无法补贴其收入的学生来说, 这种打击尤为沉重。

【注释】 名词 hit 的意思是“ 打击 ”。

【例句】 He made a *hit* at the man 's face, but missed . 他向着那个人的脸打去, 但是没有打着。

The bomber made a direct *hit* . 那架轰炸机进行了直接攻击。

这个词的另一个意思是“ 成功 ”。

【例句】 You 've made quite a *hit* with Bill . 你已给比尔留下良好的印象。

Her new film is quite a *hit* . 她的新影片颇为成功。

8 . **【原文】** Their stress levels are now such that a growing number is leaving ...

【译文】 他们的紧张已经到了这样的程度: 辍学人数在增加,

【注释】 such that 的意思是“ 这样.....以至 ”。

【例句】 The damage was *such that* it would cost too much money to repair . 损害十分严重, 以至于要花很多钱才能修复。

His kindness is *such that* we shall never forget him . 他是这样善良, 以至于我们永远不会忘记他。

也可以说 such as to (do)。

【例句】 The pain in her foot wasn 't *such as to* stop her walking . 她的脚疼还不至于影响她走路。

9 . **【原文】** ... and those who remain find that their constant financial difficulties mean that their

academic work suffers .

【译文】而即使能够留在学校继续念书,由于财务状况困难也非常影响其学业。

【注释】 动词 suffer 在这里的意思是“受到损害”。

【例句】 Your studies will *suffer* if you play too much football . 如果你用过多的时间踢足球,你的学习将会受到影响。

Her business *suffered* when she was ill . 她生病时,生意受了损失。

10 . 【原文】 Already, in general, students are demoralised by the debt that they are in and by the prospect of graduate unemployment .

【译文】 总体上讲,学生们已经对于目前负债累累以及面临失业问题感到沮丧。

【注释】 (1) 动词 demoralise 的意思是“使泄气”。

【例句】 The weather and many setbacks *demoralized* the troops . 天气不好和多次挫折使得部队士气低落。

Talk of defeats had *demoralized* the team . 关于失败的谈论使球队沮丧。

【注释】 (2) 短语 in debt 的意思是“负债”。

【例句】 He is heavily *in debt* . 他负债累累。

You saved my life: I am forever *in your debt* . 你救了我的命,你的大恩大德我没齿不忘。

11 . 【原文】 The decision to reduce grants serves only to make this situation worse .

【译文】 而削减助学金的决定只能是雪上加霜。

【注释】 (1) 动词 reduce 的意思是“减少,削减”。

【例句】 They managed to increase profits by *reducing* costs . 他们设法通过降低成本来增加利润。

Antibiotics will *reduce* the swelling . 抗菌素将使肿块变小。

【注释】 (2) 动词 serve 在这里的意思是“起.....作用”,与动词不定式连用。

【例句】 That law *serves* to isolate the Negroes . 那条法律起着隔离黑人的作用。

A single example will *serve* to illustrate the point . 一个简单的例子就能说明这个要点。

12 . 【原文】 Drop-out rates due to financial difficulty are on the up and a cut in maintenance grants will restrict access to higher education .

【译文】 由于经济上困难而使得辍学率处于上升的趋势,而助学金的削减会减少人们接受高等教育的途径。

【注释】 短语 on the up 的意思是“在上升中”。

【例句】 Try to hit the ball *on the up* . 设法在球弹起时击球。

The curve is steadily *on the up* . 曲线逐渐上升。

13 . 【原文】 Currently students are making the choice between financial hardship now, or debt later, and usually end up facing both .

【译文】 目前,学生们处于两难的境地,要么是现在的经济上的困难,要么是今后背负债务,而通

常是最终这两样都躲不开。

【注释】 短语动词 *end up* 的意思如下：

(1)“ 最后(有某种结局), 最后(成了)”, 后面可接介词短语、形容词或者分词。

【例句】 If you drive your car like that, you 'll *end up* in hospital . 如果你这样开车, 早晚得进医院。

Carry that box of explosives carefully or we 'll *end up* dead ourselves ! 抬那个炸药箱要小心, 否则我们自己就会被炸死 !

At first he refused to accept any responsibility but he finally *ended up* apologizing . 起初他拒绝承担任何责任, 但终究还是道歉了。

(2)“ 最后(到达某处)”, 后面可接表示地点的介词短语或者副词。

【例句】 They may *end up* in China . 他们最后可能到达中国。

The car *ended up* in the ditch . 汽车最后翻到沟里了。

(3)“ 结束”, 后面可接介词 *with*。

【例句】 The politician finally *ended up* with his speech . 那位政治家终于结束了他的演讲。

The party *ended up* with the singing of *Auld Lang Syne* . 晚会最后以合唱《友谊地久天长》结束。

14 . 【原文】 The decision to cut back even further the slim financial support given to students will not be easily accepted .

【译文】 削减原本就微薄的经济上的支持不是轻易可以被接受的。

【注释】 短语动词 *cut back* 的意思是“ 削减, 降低”。

【例句】 If we don 't sell more goods, we 'll have to *cut back* production . 如果我们卖不出更多的产品, 就不得不削减生产。

After the big job was finished the builder *cut back* the number of men working for him . 在这个大项目结束后, 建筑商削减了为他工作的工人人数。

语法告诉你

某些情态动词与完成式动词连用的意义

1 . *should* / *ought to* 接完成式动词表示应该做而未做某事, 意思是“ 本应该”, 例如:

I *should have read* it by Friday . 我本应该在星期五以前把它看完的。

They *shouldn't have come* . 他们本不应该来。

You are right: I *should have thought* of that . 你是对的: 我本应该想到这一点。

She *ought to have been* more careful . 她本应该更仔细些。

2 . *must* 接完成式动词表示对过去情况的推测, 意思是“ 肯定已经”, 例如:

His watch *must have stopped* . I will go and call him . 他的表肯定停了。我去叫他。

The road is wet . It *must have rained* last night . 路很湿。昨天夜里肯定下过雨了。

它的否定式是 *can't* 接完成式动词:

He *can't have slept* through all that noise . 他不可能不被那么大的喧闹声吵醒。

He *can't have taken* it upstairs . 他不可能已经把它搬上楼去了。

3 . *may/ might* 接完成式动词表示过去的可能性,意思是“或许,可能”,例如:

You *may (might) have read* about it in the paper . 你可能在报纸上已经读到这件事了。

She *may (might) have gone* to the clinic . 她或许到医务室去了。

They *may have derived* inspiration from these words . 他们或许是从这些话中得到了启发。

4 . *could* 接完成式动词表示过去的可能性,意思是“那时可能;本来可以;差点就要”,例如:

They *couldn't have left* so soon . 他们不可能那么快就走了。

She *could not have been* more than sixteen, since she still wore her long fair hair in a plait . 既然她还梳着美丽的长辫子,当时她不可能超过 16 岁。

I *could have lent* you the money . Why didn't you ask me ? 我本来可以借给你钱的。你为什么不向我借呢 ?

I *could have died* laughing . 我差点没笑死。

这一形式还可以表示委婉的批评,意思是“其实可以”,例如:

You *could have been* more considerate . 你其实可以更多替别人想想。

We *could have started* a little earlier . 其实我们可以更早一点动身。

5 . *needn't* 接完成式动词表示本来没必要做某事,意思是“其实没必要”,例如:

You *needn't have told* them that . 其实你没必要把那事告诉他们。

We *needn't have taken* our thick clothes . The weather was really warm . 我们本来不需要带厚衣服的。天气确实很暖和。

She *needn't have come* in person — a letter would have been enough . 她其实不必亲自来的,写封信就够了。

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . B

2 . (open)

Exercise 2

1 . D

2 . A

3 . B

4 . D

5 . D

Exercise 3

1 . corresponding

2 . hopeful

3 . joint

4 . budget

- 5 . utilise 6 . reduced 7 . burden 8 . proposal
9 . reception 10 . funds

Exercise 4

- 1 . in general 2 . end up 3 . compared with 4 . due to
5 . apply to 6 . cut back 7 . out of work 8 . take up

Exercise 5

- 1 . Being 2 . planted 3 . learnt 4 . telephoning
5 . Used 6 . ruining 7 . having 8 . held

参考译文

预算带给学生更沉重的负债

1 . 学校代理秘书约翰·霍尔斯特德和学生会秘书长埃米莉·洛马克斯在听到宣布学生的助学金的预算要削减10个百分点后,立即发表了一个联合声明,内容如下:

2 . 一个国家未来的繁荣兴旺是有赖于这些学生的,而使他们的生活愈发艰难,这样的做法确是目光非常短浅的。

3 . 提议中的削减10%的助学贷款和学生负债相应的上涨会使上大学本身的价值产生疑问。而这恰恰发生在大学生在假期找不到工作来贴助学金,以及他们毕业后无法找到工作的时候。

4 . 1994—1995年度向大学生发放的资金(助学金加上一般贷款)提高了4个百分点,而这个数字仅仅是对在伦敦上学的学生适用,在兰开斯特和伦敦以外的其他地方,这个数字仅为2.9个百分点。下个学期,学生的总计收入(助学金加上一般贷款)为3155英镑,35%是一般性贷款,而本学期是3065英镑,贷款为26%。

5 . 兰开斯特的大学毕业生比其他地区的大部分毕业生找工作方面更为成功(我们这里的失业率为12%,而全国的失业率为16%)。但是许多大学毕业生还是无法找到学以致用的工作。例如,有六名临近毕业的学生找到的全职工作就是在当地的宾馆做餐厅、酒吧和前台的服务员。

6 . 对于大学的这项预算决议会减少人们受高等教育的机会。对于那些成年的学生和父母没有工作而无法补贴其收入的学生来说,这种打击尤为沉重。他们发现尤其是在假期特别感到无助,因为那时没有任何津贴,也少有机会可以找到工作。随着国家摆脱衰退的局面(我们希望如此),随着有技能的人员需求的增长,将会证明这种减少接受高等教育途径的做法是何等的目光短浅。

7 . 学校代理秘书约翰·霍尔斯特德说:“昨日的这项宣布使得事态更为恶化,而不是有所改善。对于大多数学生背上日益沉重的债务我深感担忧。他们的紧张已经到了这样的程度:辍学人数在增加,而即使能够留在学校继续念书,由于财务状况困难也非常影响其学业。”

8 . 兰开斯特的学生会秘书长埃米莉·洛马克斯对这项决议感到震惊,她说:“学生们对于助学金削减10个百分点确实感到非常震惊。他们无法承担。总体上讲,学生们已经对于目前负债累累以及面临失业问题感到沮丧。而削减助学金的决定只能是雪上加霜。”

9 . “由于经济上困难而使得辍学率处于上升的趋势,而助学金的削减会减少人们接受高等教育的途径。目前,学生们处于两难的境地,要么是现在的经济上的困难,要么是今后背负债务,而通常是最终这两样都躲不开。”

10 . “除此之外,50岁以上的大学生已不能申请学生贷款,因此,这个决议对他们的打击恐怕比辍学的学生更为

沉重。削减原本就微薄的经济上的支持不是轻易可以被接受的。”

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------|----------------|
| 1 . Cycles | 2 . cycle computer | 3 . shoe | 4 . cycle bags |
| 5 . mountain bike | 6 . cycle helmet | | |

Practice 2

- 1 . T 2 . F 3 . T 4 . T 5 . T 6 . T

翻译实践

Practice 3

- 1 . 对于这些形式的污染和对其他形式的污染一样,破坏性锁链的因果关系都可以追溯到一个缘由:“太多的汽车,太多的工厂,太多的洗涤剂,太多的杀虫剂,超音速飞机产生的越来越多的尾气,不当的污水消毒处理方法,太少的水源,太多的一氧化碳。
- 2 . 矿物燃料每年还向大气层放出 52 亿吨二氧化碳,而热带森林燃烧大约放出 18 亿吨二氧化碳,这两项都促进了二氧化碳的集结,从而会很快引发温室效应。
- 3 . 寄宿学校和走读学校的平均费用在 1993 年 9 月截止的学年中上涨了 4 个百分点,而前一年学费增长了 8 . 5% ,前两年的增长率均超过 12% 。
- 4 . 菲利普·利奥波德梅茨格是法国卡地亚珠宝行在伦敦的负责人,当他被问及为什么英国人在奢侈消费上逊于意大利人和法国人的时候,他早已有了答案:由于房产价格和学校费用。
- 5 . 有关英国学费安排,还可以向一些独立的咨询公司咨询,例如贝恩·克拉克森金融服务公司、弗雷泽·马尔公司、学校费用投资公司、学校费用保险公司、托里·劳金融策划公司、约翰逊·弗赖金融服务公司和怀特亥德伙伴公司。

Practice 4

- 1 . 一部分原因是出于英国语言本身,而更为重要的是凭借着学校的声望。
- 2 . 现在学校费用的增长率较为缓慢是由于校方也已经明白他们收取的费用不能够高于市场承受力。
- 3 . 在学生入学的时候,一次性交齐或部分缴纳可能产生的费用,可以产生 15% 的折扣。
- 4 . 大多数是想直接用他们的收入来支付学费,其他的人去向祖父母寻求帮助,还有一些用他们的财产作抵押贷款来负担学校的费用。

5. 下个学期,学生的总计收入(助学金加上一般贷款)为 3 155 英镑,35% 是一般性贷款,而本学期是 3 065 英镑,贷款为 26%。

Practice 5

1. The Chinese spend less lavishly on luxuries than the Americans .
2. The cost of housing in this area has soared sharply in recent years .
3. The university retains its reputation for offering a first-class education .
4. The prices of vegetables are continuing to rise, although the rate is slowing .
5. Nowadays parents are willing to make sacrifices for their children 's education .

写作指导

Practice 6

All the large cities in the United States, and many of the smaller ones, have their own newspapers . Some cities have more than one . You may already have heard of some of these newspapers and magazines . There are newspapers that are read all over the country, such as The New York Times, The Washington Post, U .S .A . Today, The Christian Science Monitor, and The Wall Street Journal, which specializes in financial news .

In addition to daily newspapers, there are also many news magazines which are published once a week . Among the best known weekly news magazines are Time, Newsweek, US News and World Report .

Practice 7

- 1 . A 2 . H 3 . E 4 . B 5 . C 6 . D 7 . F 8 . G

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

江: 格林先生, 请就座。

格林: 谢谢。呃, 菜肴看起来如此精美!

江: 您想试试筷子吗?

格林: 好啊, 我想我应付得了。

江: 您想用点葡萄酒还是烈性酒?

格林: 我想先来点葡萄酒吧。

江: 为了您的健康, 干杯!

格林: 也为您的健康, 干杯!

示例 2

主人: 来吧, 我们来尝尝这些菜肴吧。

客人: 这都是正宗的中国菜吗?

主人: 是的, 这个是松花蛋。

客人: 嗯, 味道很好。

主人: 请尝一尝香酥鸭。

客人: 这鸭子既松软又酥脆。

主人: 请随意用。这菜如果滚烫时吃味道最美。

示例 3

客人: 这鸡吃起来跟闻着一样香。

主人: 这个品种是这儿的特产。

客人: 这是我尝过的最美味的了。

主人: 您喜欢, 我很高兴。

客人: 真不错。您点的菜如此丰盛, 太好吃了。这顿晚餐真太好了。非常感谢。

主人: 能与您共进晚餐是我们的荣幸。

2.

Waitress: This is sour and sweet fish .

Guest: Mm . . the fish tastes as good as it looks .

Waitress: It is the special of our restaurant .

Guest: How delicious it is ! Oh, I can never resist it .

Waitress: I 'm glad you like Chinese food .

3.

Guest: I really enjoy the meat .

Host: It is a special local product of this province .

Guest: I 've never tasted anything better .

Host: Then please have some more .

4.

Jack: Here we are, Mr . Lu . Make yourself at home .

Lu: Thank you, Jack .

Jack: Would you like to use a knife and fork ?

Lu: Well, I don 't think I can manage them . I prefer chopsticks .

Jack: Which do you prefer, red wine or beer ?

Lu: Beer, please .

All: Cheers !

5.

1)

Zhou: Would you like to try a little Maotai ? It 's a famous brand of Chinese spirits .

Lee: Is it ? OK . I 'd like to try it .

Zhou: How do you like it ?

Lee: Mm . . it tastes so nice . I like it .

Zhou: I 'm glad you like it . Well, here 's to your health . Cheers !

Lee: And to yours . Cheers !

2)

Lee: Take a seat here , Zhou . I 'd like to treat you to some Western food today .

Zhou: Oh , thank you . I 'd like to try it .

Lee: You must try steak first . Would you like the steak rare or well done ?

Zhou: Well done , please .

Lee: Zhou , come on . Just make yourself at home . Help yourself , please .

Zhou: Thank you .

Part 听力实践

A . 1) B 2) C 3) A 4) D 5) A
6) D 7) C 8) B 9) D 10) B

对话原文:

1) M: I can come to your office and pick you up in half an hour . Is that all right ?

W: Good . That means you 'll be here at eight forty .

Q: What time is it now ?

2) W: Are you going to the basketball game ?

M: No . The tickets are too expensive for me . I think I 'll stay at home and watch the game on TV .

Q: What the man going to do ?

3) W: Excuse me , Mr . Brown , can I borrow these books ?

M: Sorry . You are allowed to have only one book at a time .

Q: Who is Mr . Brown ?

4) W: How long will it take this package to get to Beijing by air ?

M: By air ? About two days .

Q: Where is the conversation most probably taking place ?

5) M: Oh , hi . I 'm glad you called . I 've been trying to call all morning . But there was no answer .

W: I know . I visited Janet before I went shopping , and then went to the post office .

Q: What did the woman do first in the morning ?

6) M: Do you fell like going to a movie ?

W: No , I 'm not in the mood today . Let 's go dancing for a change tomorrow .

Q: What does the woman mean ?

7) W: Please turn down the radio . I can 't hear anything my friend is saying on the phone .

M: Hurry up and finish your call . You 've been disturbing me , too .

Q: What is the man doing ?

8) M: I 'm so tired . I can 't keep my mind on what I 'm doing . You know we have an English test tomorrow and I 'm nervous .

W: Why don 't you take a few minutes off ? Have a cup of coffee and you can relax .

Q: Why does the man feel nervous ?

9) W: Tom is a quiet boy . He rarely says a thing .

M: Yes , he is . But his brother Bob is just the opposite .

Q: What does the man think of Tom 's brother ?

10) M: I 'm still waiting for the clerk to come back and make some copies of this paper for me .

W: Why bother him ?I 'll show you how easy it is to work the machine .

Q: What does the woman mean ?

B .

1 . This passage is intended to provide advice to B .

2 . 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) F 5) T 6) F 7) T 8) F

短文原文:

Do you want to invite foreign friends for a dinner party at home ? Here are some rules to follow .

First ,cook some traditional Chinese food like spring rolls ,and invite your guests to join you . This often makes them enjoy the dinner party all the more .

At the dinner table ,let your guests serve themselves . Offer them a second serving after they finish ,but don 't ask more than twice .

Most important of all is to be natural . You don 't need to try too hard to be polite .

Follow these rules ,and you 'll have a pleasant time with your foreign friends .

3 .

It is January 10th . Today Jane is 1) seventeen years of age . She is wearing a 2) pretty new dress . She is expecting all her friends to come to her 3) birthday party . They are going to arrive in a 4) short time . They are going to bring many beautiful 5) presents with them . Jane 's mother has prepared a lot of nice things to 6) eat and drink . The young people are going to play 7) games , sing ,dance ,and listen to music . They will have a 8) wonderful time together .

4 . 1) B 2) A 3) C

短文原文:

We have rather a small house ,with only one spare bedroom . You can imagine our worry ,when Aunt Johnson wrote to say that she was coming to stay with her family for the weekend . Her family ,I should explain ,consists of four boys ,all under the age of twelve .

I sent off a telegram at once ,saying that our house was too small . Aunt Johnson called us up the next morning . " I forgot to explain , " she said in her sweetest voice , " the boys will be bringing a couple of tents . "

Even so ,my wife was still worried . It was true we had a large garden , but there was still the problem of feeding four growing boys .

" And what if it rains ? " she demanded .

But Saturday morning turned out to be bright and clear when I went to the station to meet Aunt Johnson . I managed to put three of the boys ,together with the luggage ,into the back of the car . The youngest sat in front ,with Aunt Johnson and me .

" I didn 't see the tents among your luggage , " I remarked over my shoulder to David ,the eldest boy .

" The tents ! " exclaimed Aunt Johnson . " Heavens ! We left them in the home . "

Questions:

1) What worried the speaker most when his aunt 's family came to visit him for the weekend ?

2) Where were the children supposed to sleep ?

3) What is true according to the story ?



Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 Figures and numerous facts prove that there are already, and certainly that there will be, too many people .

【译文】 数字及众多的事实证明: 人口已经过多, 而且必然还将会过多。

【注释】 动词 prove 的意思是“证实, 证明”, 后面接名词、从句或复合宾语。

【例句】 He has *proved* his courage in battle . 他在战斗中证明了他的勇敢。

This document *proves* that she has a legal claim to the estate . 这份文件证实她对这份房产拥有合法权利。

Facts have *proved* these worries groundless . 事实证明, 这些担忧是没有根据的。

这个动词也可以用作系词, 意思是“证明是”。

【例句】 The old methods *proved* best after all . 老方法终究证明是最好的。

The task *proved* (to be) more difficult than we 'd thought . 那个任务证明比我们想像的更困难。

2. 【原文】 According to recent calculations, maintaining such a rhythm of growth would result in 60 million billion people on the earth in 900 years, . . .

【译文】 据最近的计算结果, 如果保持这样的增长速度, 900年后地球人口将达到6万亿,

【注释】 result in 的意思是“导致”。

【例句】 Our efforts *resulted in* success . 我们的努力导致成功。

These talks *resulted in* reducing the number of missiles . 这些会谈的结果导致了导弹数额的减少。

3 . 【原文】 Optimists believe and often assert that science will indeed find solutions to the problem of overcrowding, namely by providing the means to immigrate other planets .

【译文】 乐观主义者总是相信而且断言,科学可以找到解决人口拥挤的办法,这指的是可以找到把人类转移到其他星球生存的办法。

【注释】 (1)副词 *namely* 的意思是“即,那就是”。

【例句】 Only one boy was absent, *namely* Harry . 只有一个孩子缺席,那就是哈利。

The means of production, *namely* factories, mines and land, should be owned by the state . 生产资料,即工厂、矿山和土地,应该为国家所有。

【注释】 (2)动词 *immigrate* 的意思是“移居,移入”。

【例句】 Many Italians *immigrated* to the United States and Canada . 许多意大利人移居美国和加拿大。

European families emigrating from their homelands in the aftermath of World War were encouraged to *immigrate* to Australia . 作为第二次世界大战的后果而从自己的国家移出的欧洲家庭被鼓励移居到澳大利亚。

4 . 【原文】 In effect, even if it should become possible, 50 years would be sufficient for the 60 million billion people to multiply to the point of populating Venus, Mercury, Mars, the Moon and the satellites of Jupiter and Saturn with a density equal to that of the Earth .

【译文】 实际上,即便这有可能做到,50年的时间足以使6亿亿人口增长到使金星、水星、火星、月亮和木星、土星的卫星达到像在地球上一样的人口密度。

【注释】 (1)短语 *in effect* 的意思是“实质上,实际上”。

【例句】 The two systems are, *in effect*, identical . 那两种制度实际上是相同的。

Theoretically the car does 110 km . p . h . , but *in effect* it seldom goes over 100 . 在理论上,这种汽车速度达到每小时110公里,但是实际上很少超过100公里。

【注释】 (2)短语 *to the point of* (sth .) 的意思是“达到……的程度”。

【例句】 His manner was abrupt *to the point of* rudeness . 他的态度无理到粗暴的程度。

She worked *to the point of* exhaustion . 她工作到筋疲力尽的程度。

5 . 【原文】 Today, a good part of humanity suffers from malnutrition or from undernourishment .

【译文】 当今,有相当数量的人口遭受营养不良或是营养不足。

【注释】 形容词 *good* 在这里的意思是“大量的,相当多的”。

【例句】 You must be tired; you 've come a *good* way . 你一定累了,你来时走了那么远的路。

Bill had a *good* drink at the pub last night . 昨天晚上比尔在酒馆里喝了很多酒。

6 . 【原文】 Some think that the recent scientific discoveries applied to agriculture and known under the name of “ green revolution ” will resolve the problem .

【译文】 一些人认为,近年来用于农业上并称之为“绿色革命”的科学发现会解决这一问题。

【注释】 短语 *under the name of* 的意思是“用……名字”。

- 【例句】** He writes *under the name of* Nimrod . 他用尼姆洛德的笔名写作。
 Did he publish the novel *under his own name*, or under a pseudonym ? 他发表小说是用
 的真名还是假名 ?
 这个短语的另一个意思是“以……的名义”。
- 【例句】** He cheated me *under the name of* a friendship . 他打着友谊的幌子来欺骗我。
- 7 . **【原文】** In underdeveloped countries, although mostly agricultural, the lag in food production in
 relation to population growth increases more and more .
【译文】 在不发达国家, 尽管是以农业为主, 但是相对于不断增长的人口, 食品生产滞后的问题
 还是日益严重。
【注释】 短语 in relation to (sth .) 的意思是“有关; 与……相比”。
- 【例句】** I have a lot to say *in relation to* that affair . 我对那件事有许多话要说。
 Prices seem high *in relation to* wages . 与工资相比, 价格似乎比较高。
- 8 . **【原文】** The world 's population explosion is the source of a whole series of environmental
 deteriorations, which in time can have disastrous consequences .
【译文】 世界人口爆炸是一系列环境恶化问题的罪魁祸首, 这些早晚会产生灾难性的后果。
【注释】 短语 in time 的意思是“早晚, 迟早”。
- 【例句】** It 'll be crystal clear to you *in time* . 你迟早会看清楚的。
 You 'll learn to do it *in time* . 你迟早将学会怎样做这事。
 这个短语的另一个意思是“及时”。
- 【例句】** Will I be *in time* for the train ? 我能及时赶上火车吗 ?
 The doctor came *in time* to save her life . 医生及时赶到挽救了她的生命。
- 9 . **【原文】** Because the population-food imbalance makes it necessary to increase agricultural
 production “ at any price ”
【译文】 由于人口和食品的失衡使得有必要“不惜代价”地增加农业产出,
【注释】 短语 at any price 的意思是“不惜任何代价”。
- 【例句】** I will accomplish my purpose *at any price* . 我决心不惜任何代价达到我的目的。
 The people wanted peace *at any price* . 人们想要和平, 不论付出多大代价都行。
- 10 . **【原文】** . . . methods often harmful to the environment are used without judgment .
【译文】 对环境有害的方法也不加控制地使用。
【注释】 句中的 often harmful to the environment 是后置定语, 修饰名词 methods。如果一个形
 容词作定语, 而它本身又有自己的修饰语(例如副词和介词短语)时, 就要放在所说明的
 名词后面。
- 【例句】** He suggested a method *at once economical and practical* . 他提了一个既经济又切实可
 行的办法。
 Many diseases are caused by bacteria *invisible to the naked eye* . 许多疾病是由肉眼看
 不到的细菌引起的。
 The device is made of materials *sensitive to heat and light* . 这种装置是用对热和光敏

感的材料制成的。

11. 【原文】 Damming the Mekong risks the same consequences for Vietnam and neighbouring countries .

【译文】 在湄公河上建筑大坝也给越南以及邻近的国家带来与此相同的后患。

【注释】 动词 risk 的意思是“冒遭受……的危险”。

【例句】 He was willing to *risk* death to save his friend . 他愿意冒死去救他的朋友。

They *risked* defeat in fighting the larger army . 他们冒着遭受失败的危险去和比他们强大的军队作战。

12. 【原文】 Certain situations are perceived as dangerous only when they become critical enough to cause numerous deaths .

【译文】 某些情况只有当它们变得十分危急,而足以导致大量死亡的时候,才会被视为是危险的。

【注释】 perceive ... as 的意思是“认为……是”。

【例句】 I *perceived* his comment *as* a challenge . 我认为他的话是一种挑战。

词汇精华

instruct *vt.*

1. 教, 教授

【例句】 My job is to *instruct* you in mathematics .

【译文】 我的工作是你教数学。

【例句】 They *instructed* me in the best ways of doing the job .

【译文】 他们教给我做这事的最好方法。

2. 命令; 指示

【例句】 I've *instructed* them to keep the room locked .

【译文】 我已命令他们把那房间锁着。

【例句】 They haven't *instructed* us where to go .

【译文】 他们没有指示我们去什么地方。

3. 通知, 告诉

【例句】 We are *instructed* by our clients that you owe them \$ 600 .

【译文】 我们的当事人告诉我们你欠他们 600 美元。

【例句】 I have been *instructed* by the bank to pay the deposit .

【译文】 我已经接到银行通知要交纳定金。

instruction *n.* 教导; 指示; 说明

destroy *vt.*

1. 破坏, 摧毁

【例句】 An atom bomb would *destroy* a city .

【译文】 一颗原子弹能毁灭一座城市。

【例句】 His hope was *destroyed* .

【译文】 他的希望破灭了。

2. 消灭;故意杀死(动物)

【例句】 We *destroyed* about 25 brigades in the next three months .

【译文】 在后来的 3 个月里,我们大约消灭了 25 个旅。

【例句】 The injured dog had to be *destroyed* .

【译文】 那只受伤的狗应该杀掉。

destruction *n.* 毁灭;灭亡

multiply *v.*

1. 乘

【例句】 If you *multiply* two by three, the answer is six .

【译文】 如果你用 3 乘 2, 结果是 6。

【例句】 We *multiply* the height by the width to determine the area .

【译文】 我们用宽乘高来求面积。

2. 增多

【例句】 Our chances *multiplied* .

【译文】 我们的机会增加了。

【例句】 The Indian wars greatly *multiplied* the dangers of frontier life .

【译文】 当时,印度战争大大增加了边境生活的危险。

3. 繁殖

【例句】 It is possible to *multiply* bacteria in the laboratory .

【译文】 在实验室里繁殖细菌是可能的。

【例句】 When animals have more food, they generally *multiply* faster .

【译文】 一般来说当动物有更多的食物时,它们繁殖就更快。

multiplication *n.* 乘法;倍增

worsen *v.*

1. 变坏,恶化

【例句】 The patient 's condition *worsened* during the night .

【译文】 病人的情况在夜间恶化了。

【例句】 This is due to the rapidly *worsening* economic situation throughout all of Latin America .

【译文】 这是由于全拉丁美洲迅速恶化的经济局势。

2. 使变坏,使恶化

【例句】 This new outbreak of fighting has *worsened* the situation .

【译文】 新爆发的战斗使局势恶化了。

【例句】 The drought had *worsened* their chances of survival .

【译文】 干旱使他们幸存的希望变得更加渺茫了。

provoke *v.*

1) 引起

【例句】 His foolish behavior *provoked* laughter .

【译文】 他那愚蠢的行为引起了哄笑。

【例句】 The race *provoked* his spirit of competition .

【译文】 赛跑激发了他的竞争精神。

2. 激怒

【例句】 I am not easily *provoked*, but this behavior is intolerable .

【译文】 我不会轻易被激怒,但是这种行为令人不能容忍。

【例句】 If you *provoke* the dog, it will attack you .

【译文】 如果你招惹那条狗,它就会咬你。

3. 惹得某人(做某事)(into)

【例句】 His behavior finally *provoked* her into leaving him .

【译文】 他的行为最后迫使她离开了他。

【例句】 He was *provoked* by their mockery to say more than he had intended .

【译文】 他们的嘲笑驱使他说了比原想说的还要多的话。

provocation *n.* 激怒

transform *v.*

1. 改变

【例句】 A fresh coat of paint can transform a room .

【译文】 新刷的一层油漆可使房间焕然一新。

【例句】 She used to be terribly shy, but a year abroad had completely transformed her .

【译文】 她过去总是非常怕羞,但在国外呆了一年完全改变了她的性格。

2. 把……变为(into)

【例句】 The complete change of climate *transformed* the area from a desert into a swamp .

【译文】 气候的根本变化使那个地区从沙漠变为沼泽地。

【例句】 The new owners *transformed* the old house into a showplace .

【译文】 新业主把这所老房子改变成可参观的场所。

transformation *n.* 转变

equal *a.*

1. 相同的,均等的

【例句】 Women demand *equal* pay for *equal* work .

【译文】 妇女要求同工同酬。

【例句】 In intelligence, the children are about *equal* .

【译文】 在智力上,这些孩子不相上下。

2. be equal to 等于

【例句】 An hour *is equal to* sixty minutes .

【译文】 1 小时等于 60 分钟。

【例句】 An egg *is equal to* half a pound of steak in protein value .

【译文】 就蛋白质含量而言,一个鸡蛋等于半磅牛排。

3. be equal to 胜任

【例句】 He *is equal to* the occasion .

【译文】 他能应付这种场合。

【例句】 But I *am quite equal to* taking care of myself .

【译文】 但是我完全能照料自己。

equal *vt.*

【例句】 Two plus two *equals* four .

【译文】 2 加 2 等于 4。

【例句】 He *is equaled* by no one in kindness .

【译文】 论仁慈友爱,没人能比得上他。

练习答案

Exercise 1

- 1 . It takes 37 years to double the world population now .
- 2 . The possible solutions to the population in the world include reducing family size , carrying out family planning and immigrating to other planets .

Exercise 2

- 1 . The figures tell us that the world 's population is increasing ever faster .
- 2 . Some optimists suggest immigrating to other planets , which the author thinks impossible .
- 3 . They think the problem of food shortage may be resolved by applying recent scientific discoveries to agriculture and , in underdeveloped countries , by importing food .
- 4 . Even the promoters of " green revolution " admit that the problem of food shortage cannot resolved .
- 5 . The world 's population explosion may lead to environmental deteriorations , which can have disastrous consequences .

Exercise 3

- 1 . T 2 . T 3 . F 4 . T 5 . F

Exercise 4

The Population Bomb

Problem 1: Too many people

Possible solution offered by optimists: immigrating to other planets

The author 's reaction to the solution: It is impossible .

Problem 2: Food shortage

Possible solutions: a . applying recent scientific discoveries to agriculture

b . in underdeveloped countries , by importing food

The author 's reaction to the solution: It is impossible .

Problem 3: Environmental deterioration

Prime cause: Too many people

Exercise 5

- 1 . 1) 2) 3) 4)
 2 . 1) n . 2) n . 3) n . 4) n .
 3 . 1) 2) 3) 4)

Exercise 6

- 1 . destroyed 2 . multiply 3 . numerous 4 . length

- 5 . transform 6 . density 7 . lag 8 . namely
9 . synthetic 10 . judgment

Exercise 7

- 1 . resulting in 2 . equal to 3 . under the name of 4 . in relation to
5 . In effect 6 . in time 7 . at any price 8 . is suffering from

Exercise 8

- 1 . C 2 . B 3 . A 4 . C 5 . D
6 . A 7 . C 8 . D 9 . D 10 . B
11 . B 12 . A 13 . A 14 . C 15 . D
16 . C 17 . A 18 . A 19 . C 20 . D

Exercise 9

- 1 . Who was the first person to climb that mountain without oxygen ?
- 2 . She 's the only scientist to have won three Nobel prizes .
- 3 . The last person to leave will have to turn out the lights .
- 4 . William Pit was the youngest person to become Prime Minister .
- 5 . Which was the first country to win the World Cup at rugby ?
- 6 . The only person to speak at the meeting was James .
- 7 . She was the first woman to be elected to the council .
- 8 . Maxicorp was the only company to reply to my application letter .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是熟悉动词不定式作定语的一些情况,可参见第五单元课文 B 的“课文解惑”16。

Exercise 10

- 1 . Touch me and I 'll scream .
- 2 . Go away or I 'll scream .
- 3 . Bring the flowers into a warm room and they 'll soon open .
- 4 . Don 't telephone me again,or I 'll report you to the police .
- 5 . Don 't move,or I 'll shoot .
- 6 . Start at once or you 'll be late .
- 7 . Start at once and you 'll catch the train .
- 8 . Act quickly or the situation will become very dangerous .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是熟悉一种句型,其第一部分是祈使句,第二部分是陈述句,两部分中间用连词 and 或 or 连接。关于这种句型可参见第三单元“语法告诉你”。

参考译文

人口爆炸

一、过多人口

1. 数字及众多的事实证明:人口已经过多,而且必然还将会过多。简单地计算一下要使世界人口翻一番需要的时间就会发人深省。使我们印象深刻的是,人口翻一番所需要的时间变得越来越短:公元前 6000 年时,需要 100 万年;而在公元后大约 1650 年时,只需要 1000 年左右;到了 19 世纪 50 年代,只需 200 年;到了 20 世纪 30 年代,80 年就可使人口翻一番了。现在,每隔 37 年世界人口就翻番了。

2. 如果人口持续每 37 年就翻一番,会怎么样呢?

3. 据最近的计算结果,如果保持这样的增长速度,900 年后地球人口将达到 6 亿亿,这就意味着每平方米就有 120 个人。

4. 乐观主义者总是相信而且断言,科学可以找到解决人口拥挤的办法,这指的是可以找到把人类转移到其他星球生存的办法。但是这样的解决办法完全无法实现。实际上,即便这有可能做到,50 年的时间足以使 6 亿亿人口增长到使金星、水星、火星、月亮和木星、土星的卫星达到像在地球上一样的人口密度。

二、食品短缺

5. 当今,有相当数量的人口遭受营养不良或是营养不足。

6. 一些人认为,近年来用于农业上并称之为“绿色革命”的科学发现会解决这一问题。但是这个解决方式却是最不确定的事情了。绿色革命的推广者自己也承认,这种办法也只是能把问题缓解 10 年或 20 年。

7. 在不发达国家,尽管是以农业为主,但是相对于不断增长的人口,食品生产滞后的问题还是日益严重。而当这种危机恶化时,这些国家就必须进口食品。但又从何处进口呢?

三、走向灭亡的行星

8. 世界人口爆炸是一系列环境恶化问题的罪魁祸首,这些早晚会产生灾难性的后果。

9. 由于人口和食品的失衡使得有必要“不惜代价”地增加农业产出,对环境有害的方法也不加控制地使用。比如,建造可灌溉成千上万公顷土地的巨型水坝,实际上是会引发灾难的。据此,现在阿斯旺水坝每年阻挡了由尼罗河泛滥而产生的有肥力的淤泥沉积。其结果就会明显地减低尼罗河三角洲地区土壤的肥力。在湄公河上建筑大坝也给越南以及邻近的国家带来与此相同的后患。

10. 化肥、合成杀虫剂和 DDT 的使用会产生极强的破坏力,它会使得复杂的生态系统转变为简单的生态系统,而前者却是保护环境所必需的。

11. 某些情况只有当它们变得十分危急,而足以导致大量死亡的时候,才会被视为是危险的。烟雾就是一个例子。在 1952 年,伦敦的烟雾导致了 4 000 人的死亡。这一事件引发了人们道德上的觉醒,促使了有效决定的产生。但是烟雾还会带来其他危险,也就是它会毁坏抵抗力很差的植被,而植物产生的氧气却是我们所必需的,它也会改变地球的热平衡。

12. 对于这些形式的污染和其他形式的污染一样,破坏性锁链的因果关系都可以追溯到一个缘由:“太多的汽车,太多的工厂,太多的洗涤剂,太多的杀虫剂,超音速飞机产生的越来越多的尾气,不当的污水消毒处理方法,太少的水源,太多的一氧化碳。而本源总是一个:地球上的人口太多。”

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 If your health is in question, you go to the doctor .

【译文】 如果你的健康有问题,你就去看医生。

【注释】 短语 in question 的意思是“ 有问题,被怀疑 ”。

【例句】 Your loyalty is not *in question*, and we all trust you completely . 我们毫不怀疑你的忠诚,我们完全信任你。

The veracity of the witness is *in question* . 那个证人的可靠性受到怀疑。

这个短语还有一个意思是“ 所谈的 ”。

【例句】 The job *in question* is available for three months . 所谈的这项工作只能保持 3 个月。

The woman *in question* is sitting over there . 所谈的那位妇女就在那边坐着呢。

2. 【原文】 When the entire planet 's well-being is at issue, it 's the World Health Organization you consult .

【译文】 而当整个星球的健康出了问题,那你就得去找世界卫生组织来解决了。

【注释】 (1) 短语 at issue 的意思是“ 在争议中,有待解决 ”。

【例句】 What 's *at issue* here is the whole future of the industry . 这里正在讨论的内容是整个工业的前景。

The real point *at issue* has long ago been lost sight of in the heat of controversy . 在热烈的争论中,主要的争论焦点早被忽略了。

这个短语还有一个意思是“ 不一致,有分歧 ”。

【例句】 This is a question of taste on which we are *at issue* . 我们的分歧在于兴趣不同。

His work as a doctor is *at issue* with other doctors ' practice . 他当医生的工作和其他医生的做法不一致。

【注释】 (2) 动词 consult 的意思是“ 请教;查阅 ”。

【例句】 I *consulted* a doctor about my pains . 就我的病痛我请教了医生。

Consult your dictionary when unsure of your spelling . 你拼写没有把握时,你要查阅字典。

3. 【原文】 The group 's recently released World Health Report focuses on the future — and the prognosis is excellent .

【译文】 这一组织最近公布的世界卫生报告的焦点集中在了未来的问题上——前景是光明的。

【注释】 动词 release 在这里的意思是“ 发布(新闻) ”。

【例句】 The police have *released* no further details about the crime . 对这桩罪行警方没有透露进一步的详情。

The latest developments have just been *released* to the media . 刚刚向新闻媒介公开了

最新的进展情况。

这个动词还有一个意思是“释放, 松开”。

【例句】 The convict was *released* from prison after serving his sentence . 那名犯人在服满刑之后被释放了。

The driver started the engine, *released* the brake, and was on his way . 司机发动了发动机, 松开刹车, 就上路了。

4 . 【原文】 If WHO experts are right, the 21st century will be peopled by healthy senior citizens, not only in the more developed nations of the West but throughout the world .

【译文】 如果世界卫生组织的专家预测是正确的, 那么 21 世纪将是健康的高素质人群的世界, 不仅仅是西方发达的国度, 而是全世界范围的。

【注释】 *people* 在这里是动词, 意思是“使住满, 居住”。

【例句】 He believes that the world is *peopled* with idiots . 他认为世界充满了白痴。

His race has *peopled* this island through all recorded history . 他所属的种族有史以来一直居住在这个岛上。

5 . 【原文】 ... major infectious diseases such as yellow fever and plague are under control ...

【译文】黄热病和瘟疫这类主要的传染性疾病得到了控制.....

【注释】 短语 *under control* 的意思是“ (被) 控制住”。

【例句】 Keep your temper *under control* . 要控制住你的脾气。

The fire was soon got *under control* . 火势很快得到控制。

6 . 【原文】 ... and average life expectancy worldwide has shot up from 48 in 1955 to 66 today .

【译文】在世界范围内平均寿命由 1955 年的 48 岁迅速上升到今天的 66 岁。

【注释】 短语动词 *shoot up* 的意思是“猛涨, 急速上升”。

【例句】 Rents have *shot up* in the last few months . 近几个月房租猛涨。

We shall do what we can to stop prices *shooting up* still further . 我们将尽可能抑制物价进一步急速上升。

7 . 【原文】 Coming decades will bring more of the same, the WHO predicts .

【译文】 世界卫生组织预测, 在未来几十年里情况还会像这样向好的方向发展。

【注释】 动词 *predict* 的意思是“预测, 预报”。

【例句】 It is impossible to *predict* who will win . 不可能预测谁会成功。

The earthquake had been *predicted* several months before . 地震好几个月以前就预告了。

8 . 【原文】 Average life expectancy is expected to hit 73 years by 2025 — and that's only an average .

【译文】 平均寿命在 2025 年有望达到 73 岁——而这仅仅是平均值。

【注释】 动词 *hit* 在这里的意思是“达到”。

【例句】 The yen *hit* a record high in trading today . 今天日元汇率创造了新记录。

I can't *hit* the high notes . 我唱不出高音。

9. 【原文】 Thousands of babies born at the end of the 20th century will stick around to see the dawn of the 22nd, . . .
- 【译文】 在 20 世纪末出生的成千上万的孩子将会有望看到 22 世纪的曙光。
- 【注释】 短语动词 stick around 的意思是“逗留,不离开”。
- 【例句】 *Stick around*, we may need you . 在这儿呆一会儿,我们可能用得着你。
I can 't *stick around* this delightful party any longer; I have to get back to work . 我不能在这个快乐的聚会上多逗留了,我得回去工作。
10. 【原文】 By 2025, the WHO predicts, 57 per cent of the Africa deaths will be under 50, versus 7 per cent in Europe — a marked improvement but still a gap .
- 【译文】 世界卫生组织预测,到 2025 年,非洲 50 岁以下死亡人数将会下降到 57%,而在欧洲则会降到 7%——这是个非常明显的进步,但差距仍旧存在。
- 【注释】 句末的 a marked improvement but still a gap 是一个同位语,这是一个名词短语作句子同位语的例子。在这种情况下,名词短语是对前面句子的概括,通常带有不定冠词 a/an,翻译时一般要加上“这一,这种”等字样。
- 【例句】 If there had been no space efforts we could not have gotten into space — a simplistic statement that often seems forgotten . 倘若没有进行宇宙探索,我们就不可能进入太空,这一过于简单的论点似乎常常被人们所忘记。
A mass of sugar that weighs 6 kg in California will weigh about 6 kg in Canada or Germany, an evidence showing that the force of gravitation in each place is practically the same . 一堆在加利福尼亚重 6 公斤的糖,在加拿大或德国也大约重 6 公斤,这一证据表明,每个地方的地心引力几乎是一样的。
But for the sun 's gravitational pull, all the planets would travel in straight lines, an example of what we call“ inertia .” 要是没有太阳的引力,所有行星就会以直线运动,这就是我们称之为“惯性”的一个事例。
11. 【原文】 More people around the world have access to safe water and sanitation than ever before . . .
- 【译文】 相比以往,世界上更多的人可以饮用安全的水,使用卫生设施
- 【注释】 have access to (sth .) 的意思是“有接触 的机会”。
- 【例句】 Students must *have access to* a good library . 学生必须有机会利用完善的图书馆。
Only high officials *have access to* the president . 只有高级官员可以接近总统。
12. 【原文】 . . . and most children are now immunized against major childhood diseases .
- 【译文】 大多数孩子可以接种疫苗来防止主要的儿童易发疾病。
- 【注释】 动词 immunize 的意思是“使免疫”。
- 【例句】 Have you been *immunized* against smallpox ? 你打过预防天花的防疫针了吗 ?
I have been *immunized* against typhoid . 我已经打过预防伤寒的防疫针了。
13. 【原文】 . . . but circulatory diseases and cancer made steady gains, accounting for 15.3 and 6.2 million deaths, respectively .

【译文】而血循环疾病和癌症的死亡率保持稳步增长,死亡人数分别为 1 530 万和 620 万。

【注释】 副词 *respectively* 的意思是“分别地”,表示两个或多个主语依次对应与其后的情况。

【例句】 German and Italian courses are held in Munich and Rome *respectively*. 德语和意大利语课程将分别在慕尼黑和罗马开设。

Rooms for men and women are on the first and second floors *respectively*. 男士和女士的房间分别在一楼和二楼。

The first, second and third prizes were given to John, James and Tom *respectively*. 一、二、三等奖分别授予约翰、詹姆士和汤姆。

14 . 【原文】 Unless an effective vaccine or treatment is developed ... AIDS could wipe out past gains and threaten future mortality projections .

【译文】 除非研究出一种有效的疫苗或是治疗办法..... 否则艾滋病会将所有的成果抹煞殆尽,并且还会威胁到未来的死亡率。

【注释】 短语动词 *wipe out* 的意思是“消除,去除”。

【例句】 The government is trying to *wipe out* drug trafficking . 政府正在努力消除毒品非法交易。

Whole villages were *wiped out* in the earthquake . 在那次地震中,整座整座的村庄被摧毁了。

15 . 【原文】 Last year about 1 .8 million adults died of the disease, a toll that is likely to rise — but right now children are the major victims infected .

【译文】 去年,有 180 万成年人死于艾滋病,死亡人数还在上升——但现在儿童成了最主要的感染者。

【注释】 动词 *infect* 的意思是“传染,感染”。

【例句】 The laboratory animals had been *infected* with the bacteria . 实验室的动物已经染上了那种细菌。

Police have sealed off *infected* areas of the country . 警察已经把那个国家的传染病流行区封锁起来了。

这个动词还可以表示“(以某种情绪)感染”。

【例句】 Her cheerful spirits and bubbling laughter *infected* the whole class . 她那快活的情绪和格格的笑声感染了全班。

The director's bad mood *infected* the whole cast . 导演糟糕的情绪感染了全体演员。

16 . 【原文】 Public-health officials also worry that a new, easily spread disease may emerge, much as AIDS did, to defy their best efforts at control .

【译文】 公共健康官员们还在担忧,一种新型的、易传播的疾病可能会出现,就像当年艾滋病出现一样,很难得到控制。

【注释】 (1) 动词 *emerge* 的意思是“出现”。

【例句】 The moon *emerged* from behind the clouds . 月亮从云层后面露了出来。

No new evidence *emerged* during the enquiry . 询问中没有出现新的证据。

【注释】 (2) 短语 *much as* 的意思是“非常像,和……几乎一样”。

【例句】 He works *much as* an experienced worker . 他干起活来几乎和有经验的工人一样。
这个短语还有一个意思是“尽管,虽然”。

【例句】 *Much as* I should like to see you, I am afraid you could not come . 我尽管很想见到你,但恐怕你不能来。

Much as I should like to go, I can 't . 我尽管很想去,但是我不能。

【注释】 (3) 动词 *defy* 在这里的意思是“使不可能”。

【例句】 The problem *defied* solution . 那问题无法解决。

The door *defied* all attempts to open it . 那门怎么也打不开。

17 . 【原文】 If it can 't be contained, we face the risk of returning to the pre-antibiotic era, warns Kleihues .

【译文】 克莱休斯警告道,如果这种肺结核无法被遏制,那么我们将面临倒退到抗菌素出现之前的风险。

【注释】 动词 *contain* 在这里的意思是“遏制,控制”。

【例句】 She could hardly *contain* her excitement . 她几乎抑制不住激动的心情。

Our troops have already *contains* the enemy attack . 我军已经遏止住敌人的进攻。
这个动词更常用的意思是“包含,含有”。

【例句】 The atlas *contains* forty maps . 这本地图册有 40 幅地图。

Whisky *contains* a large percentage of alcohol . 威士忌含有酒精的百分比甚高。

18 . 【原文】 This is where we come out with diet, physical exercise, no smoking and healthy sex .

【译文】 这也是我们的初衷,节食、体育锻炼、不吸烟和健康的性生活。”

【注释】 短语动词 *come out with* 的意思是“提出,说出”。

【例句】 There was silence for a few moments, then someone *came out with* a most useful suggestion . 沉默了片刻,然后有个人提出一个极为有用的建议。

She sometimes *comes out with* the most extraordinary remarks . 有时她会妙语惊人。

19 . 【原文】 In other words, if we all work out, maybe the vision of a healthy 21th century will, too .

【译文】 换言之,如果我们每个人都努力锻炼,那么一个健康的 21 世纪的设想就有可能变为现实。

【注释】 短语动词 *work out* 在这里的意思是“锻炼,训练”。

【例句】 I *work out* after school but most of my classmates work out in the morning . 我放学以后锻炼,可是大部分同学是在早晨锻炼。

The boxers are *working out* at the gym . 拳击手们正在体育馆训练。

此外,这个短语动词的意思还有“制订,解决,算下来是”。

【例句】 He *worked out* the plan . 他拟出了这个计划。

I can 't *work out* those problems in algebra . 我演算不出这些代数题。

The cost of holiday *worked out* at \$ 30 a head . 假日开支算下来是每人 30 美元。

语法告诉你

倒装语序(二) 完全倒装

在完全倒装的句子中,整个谓语都放在主语的前面,而不需要加助动词。完全倒装用于以下几种情况。

1. 由引导词 *there* 引起的句子:

There is a man at the bus-stop. 公共汽车站上有一人。

There are many things to be done. 有许多事情要做。

There seems (to be) no doubt about it. 对此似乎没有任何怀疑。

2. 由 *there, here, now, then* 等副词引起的句子:

There goes the last bus. 最后一班公共汽车开走了。

Here are the others! 其他的人都在这里了!

Now is the best time to visit Paris. 现在是参观巴黎的最好时间。

Then came a new development that had far-reaching effects. 然后就迎来了具有深远意义的新发展。

3. 由某些与形容词同形而表示地点或方向的副词(如 *in, out, up, down* 等)引起的句子:

She heard quiet footsteps. In came a girl she had not seen before. 她听到轻轻的脚步声。一个她从来没见过的姑娘进来了。

Down fell half a dozen apples. 五六个苹果哗啦掉了下来。

Up went the arrow into the air. 嗖的一声箭射上了天。

Following the roar, up rushed a tiger from the bushes. 一声吼叫,草丛中呼地窜出一只老虎。

4. 有些句子没有宾语而主语又比较长,可以把状语提前,而把主语放到谓语后面:

On the table stood two glasses, an empty brandy bottle, and the remains of a meal. 桌上放着两个玻璃杯、一个空的白兰地瓶子和残羹剩饭。

Four or five miles east of them lay the blue waters of Lake Michigan. 往东四五英里是密执安湖蓝色的湖水。

After the banquet came a firework display in the garden. 宴会后花园里燃放了烟火。

To the list may be added some other elements which take a middle position between conductors and insulators. 在这个单子上可以加上某些其他元素,它们处于导体和半导体之间的位置。

In this chapter will be found a partial answer. 在这一章可以找到部分答案。

From the valley came a tinkling sound, a soothing moo, the lull of alien voices. 从峡谷传来叮当声,平静的牛叫声,宁静的陌生人谈话声。

5. 在系表结构作谓语的句子中,如果主语比较长或复杂,可以将表语放在句首:

More serious was the question of how the President would present the joint announcement. 总统如何提出联合声明这一问题更为严重。

Happy indeed are those who receive marvelous news after a long silence . 在长期的沉默之后得到极好消息的人们确很高兴。

Behind it was a cherrywood table . 它后面是一张樱桃木的桌子。

Seated on the ground are a group of young people . 坐在地上的是一伙年轻人。

Hidden underground is a wealth of gold, silver, lead and zinc . 地下埋藏着大量的金、银、铅和锌。

6 . 在用 *as* 引导的让步状语从句中, 要把作表语的形容词或是副词放在句首。

Young *as* I am, I already know what career I want to follow . 虽然我还年轻, 可是我已经知道我要从事什么样的职业了。

Inexperienced *as* she was, she did a good job . 尽管她没有经验, 她却干得很好。

Much *as* I admire him as a writer, I do not like him as a man . 尽管我很崇拜他是一个作家, 却并不喜欢他的为人。

间或也可以把一个动词放在句首:

Try as he will, he won 't manage it . 尽管他很努力, 却仍无法应付。

Try as he would, he couldn 't open the door . 他虽然尽了最大努力, 还是打不开门。

练习答案

Exercise 1

1 . (open)

2 . In order to improve our public health, we should do the following :

Making people aware of the importance of environmental protection,

Launching a health education campaign,

Giving up smoking,

Practicing healthy sex,

Doing more physical exercise,

Practicing family planning .

Exercise 2

1 . C 2 . B 3 . D 4 . A 5 . B

Exercise 3

1 . infected 2 . resist 3 . dawn 4 . Unfortunately

5 . consult 6 . era 7 . vision 8 . predict

9 . respectively 10 . victims

Exercise 4

- 1 . in other words 2 . wipe out 3 . accounted for 4 . at issue
5 . working out 6 . in question 7 . is under control 8 . stick around

Exercise 5

- 1 . I don 't know where to park the car .
2 . Alice wasn 't sure how much to tip the porter .
3 . No one told us where to meet .
4 . Have you any idea how to open this packet ?
5 . I was worried about what to wear .
6 . We 'll have to decide whether to go or not .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是复习前面带连接代、副词的动词不定式,可参见第一册第五单元的“课文解惑”。

参 考 译 文

充满健康的未来

1 . 如果你的健康有问题,你就去看医生。而当整个星球的健康出了问题,那你就得去找世界卫生组织来解决。这一组织最近公布的世界卫生报告的焦点集中在未来的问题上——前景是光明的。如果世界卫生组织的专家预测是正确的,那么 21 世纪将是健康的高素质人群的世界,不仅仅是西方发达的国度,而是全世界范围的。

2 . 这光明的预测源于过去半个世纪成就的积累。婴儿及儿童的死亡率急剧下降,黄热病和瘟疫这类主要的传染性疾病得到了控制,在世界范围内平均寿命由 1955 年的 48 岁迅速上升到今天的 66 岁。世界卫生组织预测,在未来几十年里情况还会像这样向好的方向发展。平均寿命在 2025 年有望达到 73 岁——而这仅仅是平均值。马苏·萨布拉马尼恩是世界卫生报告部的主任,也是 1998 年卫生报告的作者之一,据他预测在 20 世纪末出生的成千上万的孩子将会有望看到 22 世纪的曙光。

3 . 当然,在世界卫生图表上也有一些示警的小红旗,在这些问题中,最突出的就是最富有国家人口寿命和最贫穷国家人口寿命的差距。例如,1996 年非洲向世界卫生组织报告的死亡人数中,50 岁以下的占 76%。而在欧洲,在此年龄死亡的人数比例仅有 15%。世界卫生组织预测,到 2025 年,非洲 50 岁以下死亡人数将会下降到 57%,而在欧洲则会降到 7%——这是个非常明显的进步,但差距仍旧存在。而且这样的进步是有代价的。相比以往,世界上更多的人可以饮用安全的水,使用卫生设施,大多数孩子们可以接种疫苗来防止主要的儿童易发疾病。但是随着社会和经济的发展也带来了心脏病、中风和癌症,亦即所谓的富裕病,它是一种随着高脂肪、少运动的“西方”生活模式而来的疾患。

4 . 去年,仍有 17 300 万人死于传染性疾病和寄生虫病,而血循环疾病和癌症的死亡率保持稳步增长,死亡人数分别为 1 530 万和 620 万。不幸的是,这种趋势仍将继续。

5 . 但是对世界健康产生最大威胁的是人体免疫缺损病毒和艾滋病的传播。国际癌症研究所的总监、1998 年卫生报告的作者之一保罗·克莱休斯博士说:“除非研究出一种有效的疫苗或是治疗办法——或者是另一种更不易做

到的就是,全球人口都开始实施安全性生活——否则艾滋病会将所有的成果抹煞殆尽,并且还会威胁到未来的死亡率。去年,有180万成年人死于艾滋病,死亡人数还在上升——但现在儿童成了最主要的感染者。这些都是不再有机会生存的孩子啊。”公共健康官员们还在担忧,一种新型的、易传播的疾病可能会出现,就像当年艾滋病出现一样,很难得到控制。抗药性的肺结核就是一个潜在的威胁。克莱休斯警告道,如果这种肺结核无法被遏制,那么我们将面临倒退到抗菌素出现之前的风险。除此而外,在一些国家,暴力犯罪已成为威胁公众健康的大问题。

6. 在过去的半个多世纪,诸如免疫接种和卫生条件改善这样的社会变革使得公众健康取得了进步。但是未来的改善将是不同于以往的,它需要的是人人参与,而不是政府行为。当数亿人仍处于贫困状态时,是很难想像这个世界上遍是强身慢跑者、健身爱好者、控制热量摄取者和拒绝吸烟者的。但是世界卫生组织认为,是可以通过对公众进行教育来做到这一点的。萨布拉马尼恩说到:“我们希望做到使每个人的健康状态都有所改善。这也是我们的初衷,节食、体育锻炼、不吸烟和健康的性生活。”换言之,如果我们每个人都努力锻炼,那么一个健康的21世纪的设想就有可能变为现实。

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

1. The ones on the right side of the box .
2. The ones in the middle of the box .
3. The ones on the left side of the box .

Practice 2

1. The directions concentrate on telling people how to properly use Comfortact, an all-purpose solution for the care of hard contact lenses.
2. The steps after wetting are soaking and cleaning.
3. As much as one half case full of Comfortact should be used to soak your lenses .
4. Eventually, it is very important to use Comfortact with hands washed thoroughly.

翻译实践

Practice 3

1. 今天,总理先生和我签署这项协议,从而表明我们对协议承担义务的决心。
2. 当民权组织、工会和宗教的领导人策划这次游行时,谁都不曾见过类似的场面。

3. 有一次,有人请爱因斯坦作广播演讲,每分钟报酬 1 000 美元,他没有答应。
4. 计算机语言有各种层次,从具体的、很接近能为某种特定计算机理解的低层次,到复杂的、能自动为各种计算机接受的高层次。
5. 采用全新的计算机结构就要求用户改写其大部分软件,其难度之大就使得这类技术无法进入商品市场。
6. 我们在 1978 年乃至今天在某种程度上面临的问题仍然是:我们两国迥然不同,贵国是地球上最老的文明古国之一,而我国是最年轻的国家之一;贵国是社会主义国家,而我国致力于资本主义;贵国是发展中国家,而我国是发达国家;像这样的两个国家是否能够超越这些差异并利用它在世界事务中建立一种前所未有的、独具特色的关系?

Practice 4

1. 据最近的计算结果,如果保持这样的增长速度,900 年后地球人口将达到 6 亿亿,这就意味着每平方米就有 120 个人。
2. 但是这个解决方式却是最不确定的事情了。绿色革命的推广者自己也承认,这种办法也只是能把问题缓解 10 年或 20 年。
3. 这一事件引发了人们道德上的觉醒,结果致使有效决定的产生。
4. 世界上没有哪个地方种植树木的条件比热带更好,那里常年的温暖和湿度促使树木生长迅速。
5. 到 2020 年,热带森林释放二氧化碳的数量可能再上升到 50 亿吨。

Practice 5

1. The bicycle output of our factory doubled/ has been doubled in the past three years .
2. What would happen if the population were to continue increasing ?
3. That area is suffering greatly from over-population and poverty .
4. The money is enough for us to go on a tour of Beijing .
5. The experiment resulted in the discovery of a cure of cancer .

写作指导

Practice 6

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) new buildings | (2) old ones | (3) It 's true that |
| (4) it is necessary | (5) not in good condition | (6) see modern things |
| (7) also | (8) historical traditions | (9) Not only |
| (10) historical events | (11) but also | (12) buildings |
| (13) I don 't object | (14) at the same time | (15) because |

Practice 7Manitoba University
Marks Report

Student: John White

Subject	Grade	Instructors	Attendance(Times/ Courses)	
			Absence	Lates
Math	B	A . Potter		
French	C	C . Glenn		3
Physics	B +	M . Drummed		
English Writing	A	R . Henry		
Computer Lab	NC	M . Robert	2	

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

职员:您好,我能为您做点什么吗?

顾客:我想把这支票兑现。

职员:您需要什么面额的?

顾客:一些 10 元的,还有点 5 元的。

职员:请收好。

顾客:非常感谢。

示例 2

职员:夫人,下午好。我可以为您效劳吗?

顾客:我想在你这里开户。

职员:您想要什么账户呢?

顾客:我想开一个储蓄账户。

职员:您想存入多少?

顾客:20 000 元,一年期。

示例 3

职员:您好,先生。我能为您做点什么吗?

顾客:我想兑换一些外币。

职员:您想怎么换?

顾客:请把这些美元兑换成人民币。

职员:先生,您想换多少?

顾客:600美元。

2.

Clerk: Hello, sir . Can I help you ?

Customer: Could you tell me the current rate for US dollars ?

Clerk: It 's 865 99 RMB for 100 US dollars in notes .

Customer: I see . Could you tell me my balance ?

Clerk: Your account number, please .

Customer: Oh, I 'm sorry . I 've forgot it .

3.

Customer: Excuse me . Can you tell me how to open a savings account ?

Clerk: Sure . It 's my pleasure .

Customer: What shall I do first ?

Clerk: Please fill in this form .

Customer: Is there a service charge for opening an account ?

Clerk: No, no charge for the savings .

4.

Clerk: Good morning . Can I do anything for you ?

Customer: Can you tell me something about opening a checking account ?

Clerk: Sure . It 's my pleasure .

Customer: What is the minimum deposit ?

Clerk: It 's \$ 100 .

Customer: Thank you very much .

Clerk: You 're welcome .

5.

1)

Clerk: Good morning, madam . Is there anything I can do for you ?

Customer: Yes, please . I 'd like to check whether the money my son sent to me has arrived here or not .

Clerk: OK, madam . Where did it come from ?

Customer: From London . Is it in and how much ?

Clerk: Let me check in on my computer for you . A second please . Ah, yes, it is in . The amount is 500 pounds .

Customer: Thanks for your help .

Clerk: You 're welcome .

2)

Clerk: Good afternoon, sir . Can I help you ?

Customer: Yes . I 'd like to apply for a personal loan . What is the procedure ?

Clerk: How much would you like to borrow ?

Customer: I think 50,000 yuan .

Clerk: Well, please wait a moment . First I have to check your records here to see your credit rating .

Customer: OK, please. I'll wait here.

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) B 2) A 3) C 4) D 5) D
6) C 7) B 8) A 9) B 10) C

对话原文:

1) M: That's a nice car, is it new?

W: No. I got it almost five years ago, but it's still in good condition.

Q: What can we learn about the woman's car?

2) M: Good afternoon. This is John Canford at World Travel Agency. Is Professor Bates there?

W: No. He's out to lunch. I'll be glad to take a message.

Q: Where is Professor Bates now?

3) W: Oh, no. It's four o'clock already and I haven't finished typing these letters.

M: Don't worry. That clock is half an hour fast. You still have time to do them.

Q: When does this conversation take place?

4) W: Do you think that you can have this TV set fixed by Friday morning?

M: I'm sorry. I couldn't possibly have it repaired by then.

Q: When will the TV set be fixed?

5) W: Would you like to see a menu?

M: No, thank you. I already know what I want to order.

Q: Where is the conversation most probably taking place?

6) W: Didn't you go to the concert last night either?

M: No. I was not feeling well.

Q: What do we understand from this conversation?

7) M: I can't find the arrival times for the Beijing to Shanghai trains on this schedule.

W: Look for Beijing in the left hand column and follow it across until you find the hour listed in the Shanghai column.

Q: What is the man looking at?

8) M: I want to ask the Greens to the party. Do you know their address?

W: No, but I'd like them to come. I think their friend Tom can give you their address.

Q: What is the man likely to do?

9) M: Do you think your car will be ready today?

W: I don't know. They had to order a part from the factory. Can you pick me up tomorrow if it isn't?

Q: What does the woman want?

10) M: It's already 9 and the next feature starts at a quarter past. But let's try to make it anyway.

W: Why not? We've got nothing to lose.

Q: What are these people going to do?

B .

1 .

Question 1): Why did the young man go to the bank?

Answer: He wanted to rob the bank.

Question 2): What then happened to the young man?

Answer: He ran away from the bank without any money.

2 . 1) B 2) C 3) D 4) D

附短文原文：

An old lady saw a young man rush out of his car in front of a bank . The keys were still in the lock . She took the keys and followed him into the bank .

The young man took a gun out of his pocket and said to the clerk ,“ Give me all the money !”

But the old lady didn 't see this . She went to the man , put the keys in his hand and said ,“ Yong man , you are very careless ! Never leave your keys in the car : Someone is going to steal it !”

The man looked at the old lady for a few seconds . Then he took his keys , ran out of the bank , got into his car and drove away quickly , without any money .

3 .

Mrs . Mills often spends too much money 1) on clothes . Yesterday she saw a beautiful 2) coat in a shop window . She went in and 3) tried it on . It was just the right 4) size , but it was very 5) expensive and it had to be paid in 6) cash . Mrs . Mills didn 't have enough money 7) with her . So she immediately went home and asked her 8) husband to buy it for her . Mrs . Mills 9) sighed . “ Dear , we have to go to the 10) bank first . ”

4 . 1) C 2) A 3) D

短文原文：

Abraham Lincoln was born in 1809 . He was President of the United States from 1861 until he died in 1865 .

Lincoln was a very tall man . He was six feet four inches . Even his feet were big . They were twelve inches long .

Lincoln was too tall to fit in most beds . When he was President , the people from his hometown gave him a special bed . It was nine feet long . That bed was big enough for President Lincoln .

All his life , Lincoln like to laugh . He liked to make other people laugh , too . People said that he was so funny that he made cats laugh .

Many people thought Abraham Lincoln was very ugly . Right before he became President , an eleven-year-old girl wrote him a letter . She said that she wanted him to grow a beard . Lincoln thought about this and decided that it was a good idea . That 's why in most pictures of Lincoln , he has a short beard .

Questions :

- 1) When did Lincoln become the president of the United States ?
- 2) Why did people from Lincoln 's hometown offer a special bed to him ?
- 3) How did people think of Lincoln before he wore a beard ?


Text A

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 If you get the job, it's probably the extra information it contains that sets you apart from the pack .
- 【译文】 如果你得到了工作,也许正是简历中一些额外的信息使你与众不同。
- 【注释】 (1)这个句子的主句是强调句型,强调的是主语 the extra information,它的后面接有一个省略了关系代词的定语从句 it contains.
- 【注释】 (2)短语动词 set ... apart from (sb / sth .)的意思是“使……与众不同”。
- 【例句】 Her clear and elegant prose *sets her apart from* most other journalists .她那清新优雅的散文比其他多数记者都好。
Exceptional gifts *set him apart from* other sculptors of his generation .卓越的才能使他在同辈雕刻家中显得出类拔萃。
2. 【原文】 This means looking at the types of people the boss has hired, talking with employees at all levels, learning what organizations the boss belongs to and if possible, the boss's outside activities .
- 【译文】 这就是要观察老板聘用的是什么样的人,与各级的员工进行交谈,了解老板所属的一些组织,如果可能的话,还要了解老板的业余活动。
- 【注释】 (1)在这个句子中动词 means 后面带有三个动名词作宾语,即 looking, talking 和 learning; 最后一个动名词 learning 有带有一个从句 what organizations the boss belongs to 和一个名词短语 the boss's outside activities 作宾语。

【注释】 (2) *if possible* 的意思是“ 如有可能 ”, 这是一个省略句。 当一个状语从句的主语是表示情况的 *it*, 而谓语中包含有 *be*, 则可以将 *it* 和 *be* 同时省略。

【例句】 Fill in the blanks with the words given and change the form where (*it is*) necessary . 用所给单词填空, 并根据需要改变其形式。

Come as quickly as (*it is*) possible . 尽可能快点来。

If (*it is*) necessary, ring me at home . 如有必要可往我家里打电话。

Whenever (*it is*) possible, the children should play outside in the fresh air . 任何时间只要有可能就让孩子们到户外玩耍, 那里空气新鲜。

3. **【原文】** To form that composite, “ Applicants can research the boss, ” she said, “ by checking with communications department for press releases, conducting a literature search for local and regional publications . . . , talking to current and former employees and talking with acquaintances in the same of similar industries . ”

【译文】 为了形成一个综合的概念, 她说: “ 应聘者要研究这个老板, 可以通过以下方式: 和外联部门联系索取相关新闻稿件, 对当地和这一地区的出版文献…… 进行研究, 与公司现有的以及从前的员工交谈, 与公司同一行业或相近行业你所熟识的人交谈。 ”

【注释】 (1) 介词 *by* 后面带有四个动名词作宾语, 即 *checking*, *conducting* 和两个 *talking*。

【注释】 (2) *check (. . .) with* 的意思是“ 和……核对 ”。

【例句】 He *checked* his answers *with* those in the back of the book . 他把他的答案和书后面的答案核对。

I want to *check with* Ames before I sign the papers . 在签署这些文件之前, 我想和阿木斯核对一下。

【注释】 (3) 动词 *conduct* 的意思是“ 进行 ”。

【例句】 Businessmen, authors and actors all may hire agents to *conduct* their affairs . 实业人员、作者和演员都可能聘用代理人处理他们的事务。

He should learn how to *conduct* a meeting . 他应该学会怎样主持会议。

这个动词还有一个意思是“ 引导, 带领 ”。

【例句】 A guide *conducted* the visitors around the museum . 导游带领游客参观博物馆。

The constable *conducted* the suspect to the police station . 警察把嫌疑人带到警察局。

4. **【原文】** To determine what skills or characteristics may be important to the position, put yourself in the boss ' shoes .

【译文】 要弄清楚什么技能或特质对所谋的职位是至关重要的, 就把自己放在老板的位置上去思考。

【注释】 成语 *put oneself in sb . 's shoes* 的意思是“ 设身处地替……着想 ”。

【例句】 *Put yourself in my shoes*, and then perhaps you 'll stop complaining . 你设身处地替我想一想, 也许你就不会抱怨了。

You have to try to *put yourself in the director 's shoes* before you can know how difficult his job is . 你得设身处地替厂长着想, 才能明白他的工作有多难。

还有一个类似的成语 *be in sb . 's shoes*, 意思是“ 处在……的地位 ”。

【例句】 And he concluded that no man could tell what he would do *if he were in the shoes of* another man . 他下结论说,没有人说得出来,要是他处在别人的地位时,他到底会怎么办。
He has had so much trouble recently that we ought to be grateful we *are not in his shoes* . 最近他困难重重,我们没有陷入他那种境地,真得谢天谢地。

5. **【原文】** To stand out, an applicant also should consider other criteria that may be important to the job .

【译文】 为了脱颖而出,应聘者就应该考虑一些其他的对这个职位有重要意义的标准。

【注释】 短语动词 stand out 的意思是“突出,引人注目”。

【例句】 Black lettering *stands out* well against dark background . 黑底衬着明亮的字体,显得格外醒目。

In this list two names *stand out* particularly . 这份名单中,有两个名字引人注目。

6. **【原文】** Activities that would demonstrate a job applicant has the necessary skills could include participation in your current firm 's speakers ' bureau, or leadership positions in civic or professional organizations — including spearheading your firm 's internal United Way campaign .

【译文】 能够体现应聘者具备这种技能的活动可能是,你参加目前供职的公司的演讲者协会,或者在民间或专业的组织中担任领导职务,甚至包括你参加公司联合会的慈善活动。

【注释】 (1)这个句子很长,在阅读时先要弄清句子的结构。这个句子的主语是 activities, 谓语是 could include; that would demonstrate a job applicant has the necessary skills 是定语从句,其中又包含着一个省略了连词的宾语从句 a job applicant has the necessary skills。

【注释】 (2)动词 spearhead 的意思是“作……的先锋”。

【例句】 The tanks *spearheaded* the offensives . 坦克作为进攻的先锋。

Young people should *spearhead* the drive for modernization . 年轻人应该争当现代化运动的先锋。

7. **【原文】** Become involved in professional organizations in a leadership capacity .

【译文】 参加专业协会,担任领导工作。

【注释】 be/ become involved in (sth .)的意思是“参加”。

【例句】 Artillery and aircraft *were involved in* the action . 炮兵和飞机参加了战斗。

More than 4.6 million workers *were involved in* strikes in 1946 . 1946年有460多万工人参加了罢工。

此外,这个短语还有一个意思是“牵连”。

【例句】 He *was involved in* a heated argument . 他卷入了激烈的争论之中。

We *are all involved*, whether we like it or not . 不管愿意不愿意,我们都牵连进去了。

词汇精华

former *a.*

1. 过去的, 从前的

【例句】 She's back to her *former* self again.

【译文】 她恢复她以前的样子了。

【例句】 It was the *former* capital of Turkey.

【译文】 它曾经是土耳其原先的首都。

2. 前者的

【例句】 The *former* option favors the married man.

【译文】 前一种选择对已婚男子有利。

former *n.* 前者 (与定冠词连用)【例句】 Both the pink and blue dresses are pretty, but I like *the former* better.

【译文】 粉红色和蓝色的衣服都好看, 可是我更喜欢前者。

【例句】 Of these alternatives, I prefer *the former*.

【译文】 在这两种选择中, 我更喜欢前者。

demonstrate *v.*

1. 说明, 论证

【例句】 How do you *demonstrate* that the pressure remains constant?

【译文】 你怎样证明压力保持不变?

【例句】 The election *demonstrates* democracy in action.

【译文】 这次选举表明民主在起作用。

2. 演示

【例句】 An assistant *demonstrated* the washing machine to customers.

【译文】 售货员给顾客表演如何使用洗衣机。

【例句】 She *demonstrated* how best to defend oneself.

【译文】 她演示如何最好地自卫。

3. 示威

【例句】 Large crowds *demonstrated* outside the British Embassy.

【译文】 大批人群在英国大使馆外面示威。

【例句】 Thousands of Americans *demonstrated* against the price increase.

【译文】 成千上万的美国人示威抗议物价上涨。

demonstration *n.* 论证; 演示; 示威participate *vi.*

参加, 参与 (与 in 连用)

【例句】 How many countries will be *participating in* the Olympic Games?

【译文】 有多少国家要参加奥运会?

【例句】 Did you *participate in* the discussion?

【译文】 你参加讨论了吗?

participation *n.* 参加, 参与incorporate *vt.*

1. 包含, 吸收

【例句】 Many of your suggestions have *incorporated* in the new plan.

【译文】 你那些建议有许多已经被纳入新方案。

【例句】 The new car design *incorporates* all the latest safety features .

【译文】 这种新的设计使汽车具有一切最新的安全装置。

2 . 合并; 组成公司

【例句】 We had to *incorporated* the company for tax reasons .

【译文】 由于税务上的原因,我们必须组成公司。

【例句】 I *incorporated* the new plans with the old .

【译文】 我把新的计划与原有的计划合并。

incorporation *n.* 结合, 合并

pertinent *a.*

1 . 有关的(多与 to 连用)

【例句】 The speaker 's remarks on patriotism were *pertinent to* the independence day celebration .

【译文】 讲演者关于爱国主义的话与独立日庆典有关。

【例句】 The lawyer wanted to know all the *pertinent* details .

【译文】 律师想要知道一切有关的细节。

2 . 有关正题的, 中肯的

【例句】 If your question is *pertinent*, I will answer it .

【译文】 如果你的问题与正题有关, 我将愿意回答。

【例句】 The speaker gave a *pertinent* reply .

【译文】 发言人给予了得当的回答。

pertinence *n.* 得当, 相关

belong *vi.*

1 . 属于(to)

【例句】 These books *belong to* me .

【译文】 这些书属于我。

【例句】 He says that mines should *belong to* the people .

【译文】 他说, 矿山应该属于人民。

2 . 是……的一员(to)

【例句】 He has never *belonged to* a trade union .

【译文】 他从未加入过工会。

【例句】 They *belong to* a younger generation .

【译文】 他属于年轻的一代。

3 . 应该位于

【例句】 The vase *belongs* on this shelf .

【译文】 花瓶应放在这个架子上。

【例句】 These items do not *belong* under this heading .

【译文】 这些项目不应列在这个标题下。

belongings *n.* 所有物

rely *vi.*

1 . 指望, 依靠(与 on/ upon 连用)

【例句】 Nowadays we *rely* increasingly *on* computer for help .

【译文】 现在我们越来越依靠计算机的帮助。

【例句】 You can *rely upon* it that it will rain this weekend .

【译文】 你可以指望本周末会下雨。

2 . 信赖 , 信任 (与 on/ upon 连用)

【例句】 You can *rely on* me to keep your secret .

【译文】 你可以相信我会给你保密。

【例句】 She could not *rely upon* Cyril .

【译文】 她不能信任希里尔。

reliance *n.* 信赖 ; 依靠

reliable *a.* 可靠的

练习答案

Exercise 1

- 1 . I would research the potential boss as well as the company . This includes looking at the types of people the boss has hired, talking with employees at all levels, learning what organizations the boss belongs to and the boss 's outside activities .
- 2 . I would 1) research the potential boss as well as the company; 2) prepare a well-designed resume that demonstrate my skills and background clearly and sufficiently; 3) consider the qualities and skills important to the job .

Exercise 2

- 1 . She found that it is as important to research the potential boss as it is to research the company .
- 2 . The purpose of researching the potential boss is to form a composite of the potential employer to learn what qualities and skills that person values and then, on your own resume, to include experiences and activities that indicate you have those qualities and skills .
- 3 . I should include in my resume information about math and financial background and related organizations .
- 4 . They do so to show their ability to think creatively .
- 5 . According to Brown, the ideal length of a resume is one page .

Exercise 3

- 1 . T 2 . F 3 . T 4 . T 5 . F

Exercise 4

The findings of Barbara 's study: it is important to research both the company and the potential boss .

The goal is to a composite of the potential employer .

Applicants can research the boss by 1) checking with communications department for press release, 2) conducting a literature search for local and regional publications, 3) talking to current and former employees, and 4) talking with

acquaintances in the same or similar industries .

Why membership in professional organization and even social clubs is important: Recruiters rely upon an applicant 's outside activities to help form a more complete picture of the applicant .

To increase your chances of being hired: 1) Phone the person in the position now, asking about the job (skills, assignments, time involved) ,the boss, his or her management style and the work environment . 2) Become involved in professional organizations in a leadership capacity . 3) Talk with employees at all levels of the company about its work, products, philosophy and values .

Include only the information that is relevant to this job and that shows you have the skills this boss is looking for .

Ideal resume length: one page .

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 . 1) v . | 2) v . | 3) v . | 4) n . |
| 2 . 1) | 2) | 3) | 4) |
| 3 . 1) | 2) | 3) | 4) |

Exercise 6

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 . motivation | 2 . resumes | 3 . philosophy | 4 . applicants |
| 5 . conducting | 6 . demonstrated | 7 . considerable | 8 . professional |
| 9 . background | 10 . participate | | |

Exercise 7

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 . stood out | 2 . depends ... on | 3 . become involved in | 4 . form a picture of |
| 5 . pertinent to | 6 . set ... apart | 7 . rely on | 8 . in your shoes |

Exercise 8

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 . A | 2 . D | 3 . B | 4 . C | 5 . D |
| 6 . B | 7 . B | 8 . A | 9 . D | 10 . C |
| 11 . C | 12 . D | 13 . A | 14 . C | 15 . B |
| 16 . C | 17 . C | 18 . D | 19 . B | 20 . A |

Exercise 9

- 1 . Without knowledge of science, it would be impossible to understand this .
- 2 . It is impossible for your team to win without constant training .
- 3 . None of the countries doesn 't have an environmental problem .
- 4 . At the beginning of learning English, he didn 't speak it without making mistakes .
- 5 . There is no right to speak without investigation .
- 6 . It is impossible for you to know what you can do without putting your hand to it .
- 7 . There is no rule without exception .
- 8 . There isn 't a man who doesn 't have his faults .

Exercise 10

1. Cold as it was, we went out .
2. Tired though I was, I went on working .
3. Much as I respect your point of view, I can't agree .
4. Disabled though he was, Paul tried his best to serve the people .
5. Lover of towns though I am, I realize that I owe a debt to my early country life .
6. Child though he is, he knows history well .

【提示】 这个练习的目的是熟悉让步状语从句中的倒装,关于这一点可以参见第七单元的“语法告诉你”。

参 考 译 文

想找到一份合适的工作就得了解更多的情况

1. 在简历中写些什么?如果你得到了工作,也许正是简历中一些额外的信息使你与众不同。
2. 芭芭拉·K·布朗博士是芝加哥安德森咨询公司的变革管理实践部的经理。在对28家公司的344名招聘人员的研究中,她发现研究将成为你老板的人与研究这个公司同等重要。这就是要观察老板聘用的是什么样的人,与各级的员工进行交谈,了解老板所属的一些组织,如果可能的话,还要了解老板的业余活动。
3. 这样做的目的就是对你未来老板的情况形成一个综合的概念,从而了解他看重什么样的素质和能力,然后在你的简历中把那些能显示你具备这种素质和能力的经历和活动囊括进去。“尽量做到详尽。”布朗建议道。
4. 为了形成一个综合的概念,她说:“应聘者要研究这个老板,可以通过以下方式:和外联部门联系索取相关新闻稿件,对当地和这一地区的出版文献进行研究(尤其对于那些不太可能刊登在全国性新闻上的小型公司),与公司现有的以及从前的员工交谈,与公司同一行业或相近行业你所熟识的人交谈。”
5. 要弄清楚什么技能或特质对所谋的职位是至关重要的,就把自己放在老板的位置上去思考。什么样的技能可以使应聘者胜任这项工作呢?在简历中什么样的教育背景、经历和活动的组合才能体现出应聘者真正具备了胜任那个职位所需要的技能和进取心呢?
6. 答案会因公司不同、部门不同而有所不同,甚至是同一公司不同的分部的同一部门的主管也有差异。布朗说道,因为招聘人员时依赖应聘者的一些活动来对应聘者产生更加完整的印象,所以专业协会的会籍,甚至是社团俱乐部的会籍都会提供有关该应聘者进取心和领导潜质的一些信息。
7. 举例来说,一个申请金融顾问职位的应聘者,就应该在其简历中囊括有关数学、金融背景以及相关的社团组织的信息。但是这些信息任何一个认认真真应聘的人都会提供。为了脱颖而出,应聘者就应该考虑一些其他的对这个职位有重要意义的标准。在这个例子中,人际交往的能力也会是重要的。能够体现应聘者具备这种技能的活动可能是,你参加目前供职的公司的演讲者协会,或者在民间或专业的组织中担任领导职务,甚至包括你参加公司联合会的慈善活动。
8. 如果你在向一家开创型的企业申请职位,你也许可以在简历中包含你的专利发明或其他足以显示你的独创性思维的情况。根据这个公司的情况和未来老板的个性,你甚至还可以包括能展示你具有冒险精神的一些活动,比如利用水肺潜水——假定这些特性在此公司中是受到重视的。
9. 为了提升你受聘的概率:
 - 打电话给目前这个职位上的员工,询问这个职位的有关情况(技能方面、工作安排、工作时间)、老板的情况、他

的管理风格和工作环境。

参加专业协会,担任领导工作。

与公司各个级别的员工交谈,了解公司的工作、产品、宗旨和价值观。

10. 就是把这些信息都包含到简历里去,也不可将简历写得太长。只包含那些与此工作相关的信息,它们能够体现你具备老板正在找寻的技能。布朗说,理想的简历长度仅为一页纸的长短,即使对于经验丰富的经理们也是如此。

Text B

课文解惑

1. 【原文】 “ Righting ” Your E-resume .

【译文】 “ 完善 ”你的电子简历。

【注释】 动词 right 的意思是“ 纠正 ”。

【例句】 The fault will *right* itself if you give it time . 如果你给他时间,那错误会自行改正。

The court ruling will *right* some existing injustices . 法庭的裁决将能纠正现存的某些不公正。

2. 【原文】 If you are interested, better boot up your computer and get online: ...

【译文】 如果你对这些招聘启事感兴趣,那就打开电脑上网:.....

【注释】 动词 boot 的意思是“ 启动(电脑)”,常与副词 up 连用。

【例句】 You should *boot up* the computer before you start work . 你开始工作之前应该先启动电脑。

The system automatically *boots up* every morning . 该系统每天早上自动启动。

3. 【原文】 Just when you 'd settled on the best fonts and paper stock for your finely designed resume, the electronic revolution has rewritten the rules .

【译文】 就在你刚刚确定了用何种字体何种纸型来完成经过完美设计的简历之时,电子革命就已经改写了原来的规则。

【注释】 短语动词 settle on 的意思是“ 抉择,选定 ”。

【例句】 Have you *settled on* the wallpaper you prefer ? 你选好你喜欢的壁纸了吗 ?

We must *settle on* a place to meet . 我们必须确定见面的地点。

4. 【原文】 Now more and more companies are discovering the advantages of electronic job applications, which they can easily forward to others parties and submit to resume databases .

【译文】 现在越来越多的公司发现了电子求职信的种种优越性,他们可以便利地将这些求职信转发给其他的公司,也可以上传到简历信息库。

【注释】 (1)这里的 forward 是动词,意思是“ 发送,转递 ”。

【例句】 Please *forward* our post to our new home when we move . 我们搬家后请把我们的邮件转到我们的新住址。

We are *forwarding* you a list of the store 's latest men 's clothing . 我们给您寄去本店

最新男装的货单。

这个动词还有一个意思是“促进”。

【例句】 The civic leaders helped to *forward* the project . 市里的领导人帮助这项计划取得进展。

This visit to the museum *forwarded* his interests in history . 这次参观博物馆促进了他对历史的兴趣。

【注释】 (2)动词 submit 的意思是“提交”。

【例句】 You must *submit* your request to the committee . 你应该把你的要求向委员会提出。
All students should *submit* their essays to their tutors on time . 所有学生都必须按时把文章交给导师。

这个动词还有一个意思是“服从,听从”。

【例句】 Children at school must *submit* to the orders of the headmaster . 在校的孩子们必须听从校长的命令。

I refuse to *submit* (myself) to his control . 我拒绝听从他的控制。

5 . 【原文】 Companies are increasingly jumping on the e-bandwidth bandwagon ...

【译文】 对于网络宽带,各个公司都在赶时髦.....

【注释】 成语 jump on the bandwagon 的意思是“赶浪头,亦步亦趋”。

【例句】 While prices are riding do fast, many shops think they can *jump on the bandwagon* and raise heir prices . 当物价上涨太快时,许多商店认为他们可以亦步亦趋,提高价格。

He is surrounded by yes-men who have *jumped on the bandwagon* . 他被一些唯唯诺诺的人所包围,这些人看他胜利在望,都倒向他这一边来。

6 . 【原文】 Like it or not,it 's time to embrace the e-resume .

【译文】 不论你喜欢与否,都得适应电子简历。

【注释】 动词 embrace 的意思是“(欣然)接受,采纳”。

【例句】 She eagerly *embraced* the offer of a trip to Europe . 她欣然接受了到欧洲旅行的建议。
Iceland *embraced* Christianity around the year 1000 . 冰岛大约在公元 1000 年时开始信奉基督教。

这个动词还有一个意思是“拥抱”。

【例句】 They *embraced* each other warmly . 他们热烈地互相拥抱。

She *embraced* her son before leaving . 她临走前拥抱了儿子。

7 . 【原文】 For ABCNEWS com,that means one of three things: sending a resume as part of an email massage, attaching it as a Microsoft Word document or providing a Web address where recruiters can view the resume online .

【译文】 对美国广播公司新闻网站来说,实际是在以下三种形式中选择:可以把简历作为电子邮件的一个部分发出,也可以把简历用微软文件制作而作为附件发出去,还可以向招聘人提供一个网址以便在网上浏览你的简历。

【注释】 (1)动词 attach 的意思是“把.....附上”。

【例句】 *Attach a label to each piece of luggage . 你把标签系在每件行李上。*

He attached the document to the letter with a pin . 他用别针把文件别在信上。

【注释】 (2) 动词 *view* 的意思是“ 观看, 察看 ”。

【例句】 *The film hasn't been viewed by the censor . 这部影片尚未经过审查人员的审查。*

The house may be viewed between 2:00 and 4:00 p.m . 下午 2 点到 4 点钟可以看房。

这个动词还有一个意思是“ 看待, 考虑 ”。

【例句】 *Future developments will be viewed with interest . 人们将饶有兴趣地考虑未来的发展。*

How do you view your chances of success ? 你怎样考虑你成功的可能性 ?

8 . 【原文】 *If the ad in the newspaper asks for an electronic submission, chances are it provides not only an e-mail address, but also a Web-site address .*

【译文】 如果在报纸上刊登的招聘广告要求电子版提交的简历, 那么在报纸上所提供的信息不仅有电子邮箱地址, 而且还有网址。

【注释】 (the) chances are (that) 的意思是“ 很可能 ”。

【例句】 *The chances are that she 'll be coming . 她很可能会来。*

Chances are he 's already heard the news . 他很可能已经听到这个消息。

9 . 【原文】 *Be sure to check out the site, which will usually explain how to apply for jobs .*

【译文】 一定要认真查询该网页, 那上面通常会说明怎样谋得这份工作。

【注释】 短语动词 *check out* 的意思是“ 检查, 核对 ”。

【例句】 *The mechanic checked out the car battery . 技工检查了汽车的电池。*

Would you check out these names and numbers, please . 请你把这些名字和数字核对一下。

这个短语动词还有一个意思是“ 结账离开(旅馆) ”。

【例句】 *He checked in at the hotel on Monday, and checked out Tuesday evening . 他在星期一住进旅店, 星期二晚上离开。*

The last guests checked out of their rooms in the morning . 最后一批客人在早上离开房间。

10 . 【原文】 *Although some recruiters request e-resumes simply to speed the application process, others collect them as grist for cost-efficient electronic hiring mills .*

【译文】 虽然有些招聘者要求用电子版方式提交简历仅仅是为了提高招聘这个环节的速度, 而有些公司接受这种电子简历则是作为有利于高效低成本的电子雇用程序。

【注释】 短语 *grist for/ to the/ someone's mill* 的意思是“ (对.....) 有利的事 ”。

【例句】 *I never refuse odd jobs to supplement my income — it 's all grist to the mill . 我从不拒绝能增加收入的额外工作, 这很有利。*

Henry doesn't like his superior; the failure of the latter's plan was grist to his mill . 亨利不喜欢他的上司, 后者制订计划的失败对他有利。

这一短语来自成语 *bring grist to the/ sb.'s mill*, 意思是“ 使.....有利可图 ”。

【例句】 Meanwhile the fools *bring grist to my mill*, so let them live out their day . 目前这群傻瓜对我们还有好处,且让他们活下去吧。

The work is not very well paid, but at any rate it *brings grist to the mill* . 这工作报酬不多,但多少可以赚一点钱。

11 . 【原文】 Many companies feed the resumes they receive into a program that scans them as a series of words and phrases .

【译文】 许多公司把收到的这些简历输入一个程序,将其中的一系列词或短语进行扫描。

【注释】 动词 scan 的意思是“ (用雷达、X光等)扫描”。

【例句】 The area was *scanned* for signs of enemy aircraft . 对该地区用雷达进行了搜索看看是否有敌机出现。

This apparatus *scans* patients' brains for tumours . 这台装置对患者头部扫描查看是否有肿瘤。

这个动词还有一个意思是“浏览”。

【例句】 She *scanned* the newspaper over breakfast . 她吃早饭时把报纸大略翻阅了一下。

He only *scanned* the letter but signed it anyway . 他只是把那封信浏览了一下,不过还是签了字。

12 . 【原文】 ... they use the program to single out and then rank the resumes that list skills relevant to that job .

【译文】(招聘者)可以使用程序挑出人选,然后将列出与那个职位有相关技能的简历排序。

【注释】 (1)短语动词 single out 的意思是“挑选,选拔”。

【例句】 Which would you *single out as* the best? 你挑选哪个作为最佳的?

They all did wrong; why *single him out* for punishment? 他们全都犯了错误,为什么偏偏挑他一个人来惩罚?

【注释】 (2)形容词 relevant 的意思是“有关的”,常与介词 to 连用。

【例句】 The film was *relevant to* what was being discussed in class . 这部影片与课堂上讨论的内容有关。

The judge ruled that the evidence was *relevant to* the case . 法官裁定,该证据与本案无关。

13 . 【原文】 And spell out all words in full, especially job titles, to avoid having “ mngr .” or “ engr .” overlooked by the resume software .

【译文】 所有的词汇都要拼写完全,尤其是工作职位名称,以避免使用了 mngr .或者 engr .这种缩写而被简历软件忽略。

【注释】 (1)短语动词 spell out 的意思是“拼出,详细解释”。

【例句】 Could you *spell* your name *out* for me again? 你能再给我说一下你的名字的拼法吗?

My instructions seem simple enough — do I have to *spell* them *out* again? 我的指示似乎很简单——我还必须仔细解释一下吗?

【注释】 (2)动词 overlook 在这里的意思是“漏看,忽视”。

【例句】 He *overlooked* a spelling error on the first page . 他没有注意到在第一页上的一个拼写错误。

We can afford to *overlook* minor offence . 较小的过错我们可以不予追究。

【注释】 这个动词还有一个意思是“ 俯视, 眺望 ”。

【例句】 My room *overlooks* the sea . 我的房间俯视大海。

We *overlook* the church from our house . 从我们的房子可以眺望那座教堂。

【注释】 (3) 短语 *in full* 的意思是“ 全部地, 全文地 ”。

【例句】 These names should be written *in full* . 这些名字必须写出全名。

The money must be paid *in full* by the last day of this month . 这笔钱必须在本月底全部交清。

14 . 【原文】 Boldfaced text, large fonts, symbols, small caps, underlines, italics and other formatting tricks won 't show up in an e-mail message, ...

【译文】 在一封电子邮件中, 无法显示出黑体字、大号字、标志、大小写、下划线、斜体字, 以及其他格式上的小花样,

【注释】 短语动词 *show up* 的意思是“ 出现, 显露 ”。

【例句】 Did everyone you invited *show up* ? 你邀请的人都到了吗 ?

The dark-toned furniture *shows up* well against the light walls . 深色的家具在浅色墙壁的衬托下, 显得更加悦目。

15 . 【原文】 If there 's any chance that your e-resume will reflect poorly upon your technical skills, send a fax or snail-mail resume instead .

【译文】 如果你的电子简历有可能会反映出你技能上的不足, 那就发传真式的简历, 或者是普通邮件的简历吧。

【注释】 短语动词 *reflect on/ upon* 与某些副词连用, 意思是“ 说明.....是..... ”。

【例句】 Your sales figures *reflect favorably on* your ability as a salesman . 你的销售数字说明你担任销售员很称职。

This scandal will *reflect badly on* the Republican Party as a whole . 这件丑闻总的来说将会严重地损害共和党的声誉。

语法告诉你

否定句的种类

1 . 完全否定句

含有 *no, none, not, never, nothing, nobody, neither, nowhere* 的句子是完全否定句。例如:

No student is to leave the room . 任何学生都不准离开房间。

None of them has come back yet . 他们之中谁都没有回来。

I have *no* time at all to write to you . 我简直没有时间给你写信。

He found that *nobody* could speak English . 他发现谁都不会讲英语。

There is *nothing* interesting in today 's newspaper . 今天的报上没有什么有趣的新闻。

They did *not* find him in the dormitory . 他们在宿舍里没有找到他。

She *never* goes to the cinema . 她从来不看电影。

The old man went *nowhere*, just stayed at school . 这位老人哪儿也没去, 只是呆在学校里。

Neither of us could help laughing . 我们谁都忍不住笑。

2 . 准否定句

含有 *hardly*, *scarcely* 的句子是准否定句。例如:

Hardly anybody came . 几乎没有人来。

I am so tired that I can *hardly* stay awake . 我累得几乎睡着了。

We *scarcely* had time for breakfast . 我们几乎没有时间吃早饭。

这类句子虽然不包括绝对的否定词, 却很接近于否定, 因此在构成反意问句时, 就要按照否定句对待, 例如:

You were *hardly* twelve then, were you ? 你那时还几乎不到 12 岁, 对吧 ?

She *scarcely* seems to care, does she ? 她看上去几乎不介意, 是吧 ?

3 . 部分否定句

主语中含有 *both*, *all*, *every* 而谓语中含有 *no*, *not* 的句子是部分否定句。例如:

Both sisters are *not* here . 并非两个姐妹都在这里。(“两个姐妹都不在这里。”应该说 *Neither* of sisters is here .)

All that glitters is *not* gold . 闪光的未必都是金子。(“都不是”应该说 *None* is ...)

Every man is *not* honest . 并非每个人都是诚实的。

4 . 双重否定句

(1) 当一个句子中出现两个否定词时就构成双重否定句, 翻译时可以按照原文处理, 也可以翻译成肯定句, 例如:

I can 't *not* obey . 我不能不服从。

Not many people have *nowhere* to live . 并非许多人都没地方可住。

No one has *nothing* to offer to society . 每个人都可以对社会有所贡献。

有时两个否定词分别出现在主句和从句:

There are *no* feasts in the world that do *not* break up at last . 天下没有不散的筵席。

Not a day goes by that someone doesn 't recognize me . 没有一天我不被人们认出来。

这里也包括用 *but* (意思是“有谁不”) 引导定语从句的复合句:

There is *no* man *but* feels pity for starving children . 没有人会不可怜挨饿的孩子们。

There is *no* one of us *but* wishes to help you . 我们大家都希望能帮你一把。

(2) 句中前面有 *cannot*、后面副词 *too* 或带前缀 *over-* 的动词时, 也构成双重否定句, 例如:

You *cannot* be *too* careful . 你无论怎样小心也不过分。(绝不能理解为“你不能太小心。”))

You *cannot* recommend this book *too* strongly . 你无论怎样推荐这本书也不过分。

This point *cannot be over emphasized* . 这一点无论怎样强调也不过分。

练习答案

Exercise 1

(open)

Exercise 2

1 . D 2 . A 3 . B 4 . B 5 . C

Exercise 3

1 . submit 2 . instructions 3 . precise 4 . remote
5 . headquarters 6 . attach 7 . overlooked 8 . scanned
9 . format 10 . fashion

Exercise 4

1 . reflect ... on 2 . check out 3 . in full 4 . like it or not
5 . jumped on the bandwagon 6 . show up 7 . singled out 8 . settled on

Exercise 5

1 . D 2 . B 3 . A 4 . C 5 . B
6 . B 7 . A 8 . B 9 . A 10 . D

参考译文

“完善”你的电子简历

1 . 招聘:美国广播公司新闻网站贝尔维网络工作室招聘高级协理制作人;波音公司西雅图分厂招聘分析工程师;亚马逊网络公司西雅图总部招聘行政助理。

2 . 如果你对这些招聘启事感兴趣,那就打开电脑上网:这些公司需要的是用电子邮件发的简历。

3 . 就在你刚刚确定了用何种字体何种纸型来完成经过完美设计的简历之时,电子革命就已经改写了原来的规则。现在越来越多的公司发现了电子求职信的种种优越性,它们可以便利地将这些求职信转发给其他的公司,也可以上传到简历信息库。对于网络宽带,各个公司都在赶时髦,这对于找寻工作的人来说就意味着:不论你喜欢与否,都得适应电子简历。

遵照指令

4 . 虽然电子简历很少作为一个必要条件——以上三个招聘启事都包含了传真号码或是邮政地址——但是许多

公司都丝毫不隐讳对于电子件的偏好。当美国广播公司新闻网站提及“电子简历最佳,但并非必需”时,反应机敏的应聘者肯定是以公司提出的最佳方式来编排和传呈他们的求职信了。

5. 对美国广播公司新闻网站来说,实际是在以下三种形式中选择:可以把简历作为电子邮件的一个部分发出,也可以把简历用微软文件制作而作为附件发出去,还可以向招聘人提供一个网址以便在网上浏览你的简历。

6. 而亚马逊网络公司则希望应聘者的简历是用美国信息互换标准代码格式编辑,以电子邮件的征文形式发送,并且指示应聘者不要发送附件。像许多大公司一样,波音公司在公司网站上提供他们自己的填空式简历表格。虽然波音公司并不反对应聘者发送普通格式化的电子简历,但是他们的网上表格为进入应聘程序提供了一个最为快捷的方式。

7. 这些实例说明,对于提交电子简历而言并无一成不变的法则,但有一点是不变的:按照雇主的指示行事。各个公司都希望用一种方式来接受电子简历——就是他们指定的方式。

8. 俄勒冈州波特兰市的一家职业咨询公司“未来缔造者”的总裁彼得·帕斯基尔说:“你得了解雇主们需要的是什么,和他们交谈,取得你所需要的信息,了解他们希望以什么形式来做事。”

9. 如果在报纸上刊登的招聘广告要求电子版提交的简历,那么在报纸上所提供的信息不仅有电子邮箱地址,而且还有网址。一定要认真查询该网页,那上面通常会说明怎样谋得这份工作。

10. 帕斯基尔说他绝不是夸大遵循正确的程序的重要性。他说到:“如果你了解了他们要求什么,以及他们想用什么形式,那么你获得成果的机率就会大多了。”

怎样运作

11. 虽然有些招聘者要求用电子版方式提交简历仅仅是为了提高招聘这个环节的速度,而有些公司接受这种电子简历则是作为有利于高效低成本的电子雇用程序。许多公司把收到的这些简历输入一个程序,将其中的一系列词或短语进行扫描。招聘者可以对应着特定的岗位挑选出一些关键词而后输入程序中,这个程序就可以从中挑拣出与所输入的关键词最匹配的应聘者。

12. 在一些大公司中,有一种电子简历高速处理系统特别流行。在此系统中,所有备选人的简历都进入一个数据库。招聘者在为某个职位找人时,可以使用程序挑出人选,然后将列出与那个职位有相关技能的简历排序,再由招聘者核查排在前列的简历。

关键词贴士

13. 在撰写你的电子简历之前,你一定要确定雇主在寻找相匹配的简历时,会去扫描哪些词汇。艾琳·盖特曼是一位简历和职业顾问,她对此说到:“写简历的人必须通晓那些对于雇主来说是很重要的语汇,这一点尤为关键。因为常出现的情况是,没有人去真正看简历。”

14. 她又说,这在波音公司尤其如此,甚至是那些传真过来的或是邮寄来的硬质拷贝件都进入了数据库。她说道,通常情况下,搜寻关键词是招聘者用来核查简历、挑选可供面试的人选的惟一的方式。

15. 为了增加你简历中的关键词被公司的电子眼捕捉到的机会,要多多使用名词,因为名词比动词更为经常地被选作关键词。而且,要尽量使用与出现在招聘启事中相同的名词。

16. 在描述与你的经验相关的具体技能时,要使用很确切的语汇。列举出你所知道的计算机程序,不要有所保留;只是要写出它们的全名。对于高科技的工作,简历应集中描述你的技术能力,这很重要。

17. 列出你曾工作过的公司——公司名称和地点——因为招聘者通常是招募来自某些公司的应聘者。所有的词汇都要拼写完全,尤其是工作职位名称,以避免使用了 mngr 或者 engr 这种缩写而被简历软件忽略。

18. 专家们说,文字简练对于电子简历而言并不像书面简历那么重要。提交一份稍微长一些的电子简历,还可以使简历中囊括关键词的几率更大呢。

格式贴士

19. 对于电子简历来说,总的格式规则就是保持简洁。

20. 在一封电子邮件中,无法显示出黑体字、大号字、标志、大小写、下划线、斜体字,以及其他格式上的小花样,因

此把精力集中于你所写的内容,别去在意看上去会怎样。此外,一份语法简明、结构完整、直入主题的简历会给人以最好的印象。

警告语

21. 虽然向明确要求了电子简历的公司发去电子简历会得到优惠待遇,但是如果你不太清楚怎样使用电子邮件这项技术,就别这样做。如果你的电子简历有可能会反映出你技能上的不足,那就发传真式的简历,或者是普通邮件的简历吧。

22. 帕斯基尔还警告说,不要把电子简历群发给那些和你所选择的领域关系甚远的公司。

23. 他说到:“要记住,用这种方法取得工作的概率甚微。电子简历诚然很时尚,但是公司还是要去聘用他们所了解的人。”

Skills Development and Practice

阅读技巧

Practice 1

1 . d 2 . b 3 . a 4 . e 5 . f 6 . g 7 . c

Practice 2

1 . C 2 . C 3 . B

翻译实践

Practice 3

1. 一百年前,美国的一位伟人签署了《解放宣言》,今天,我们就站在他的纪念像下。
2. 美国的青年人中没有阅读能力的人数令人难以置信——竟然大约占到四分之一。
3. 这个地方一度曾让旅游者望而却步,现在却已经成了寒假和暑假胜地,充满了奇观和魅力。
4. 大卫·希尔是艾切仑公司的合伙人,他说:“当学习变得令人兴奋时,就更容易持续下去。”
5. 露茜大婶已经 50 岁,该退休了,有人聘她在外面补差,这样再加上养老金将使她的收入超过她当秘书工资将近一倍。
6. 人造物质通常称为合成物质。许多人造物质正在取代某些天然材料,这或者是因为天然产品的数量无法满足日益增长的需求,或者更多是由于合成物质的物理特性是经过选择甚至加以强化的,因此它们在应用的领域中将极为有用。

Practice 4

1. 在简历中写些什么?如果你得到了工作,也许正是简历中一些额外的信息使你与众不同。
2. 这样做的目的就是对你未来老板的情况形成一个综合的概念,从而了解他看重什么样的素质和能力,然后在你的

简历中把那些能显示你具备这种素质和能力的经历和活动囊括进去。

3. 要弄清楚什么技能或特质对所谋的职位是至关重要的,就把自己放在老板的位置上去思考。
4. 答案会因公司不同、部门不同而有所不同,甚至是同一公司不同的分部的同一部门的主管也有差异。
5. 如果你在向一家开创型的企业申请职位,你也许可以在简历中包含你的专利发明或其他足以显示你的独创性思维的情况。

Practice 5

1. His finely designed resume set him apart from most other job applicants .
2. What skills you would think are important to the position if you are in his shoes ?
3. The decision you have made reflects poorly on your judgment .
4. One of our studies shows that most recruiters form a more complete picture of the applicants by learning their outside activities .
5. Like it or not, e-resumes are gradually replacing snail mail resumes .

写作指导

Practice 6

What Is Success ?

What is success ? Different people may give different answers to this question . Some people think that success means making a great deal of money . Other people think that it means holding an important post . Still others think that it means getting a high academic title .

As for me, I disagree with the above-mentioned points of view . In my opinion, success means achieving brilliant results in one 's speciality , making contributions to the country and bringing happiness to the people .

If you can gain your purpose with perseverance and industry, you will be a successful person .

Practice 7

Certificate

(04)No .236

This is to certify that the duplicate attached hereto is in conformity with the original " Transcript of Records for Advanced Studies at Dongfang Agricultural University " issued to Zhou Ming by the Dean 's Office of the University . Both the seal of Dongfang Agricultural University and the seal of Tian Lijun, Dean of the Department, affixed on the original are found to be authentic .

Notary :

.. City Notary Public Office

.. Province

The People 's Republic of China

March 4, 2004

听 说

Part 会话实践

1. 听说练习参考译文

示例 1

职员:小姐,您好。我能为您效劳吗?

海伦:是的,我想把这些信件寄到英国。我得付多少钱?

职员:每封国际信件 5 元。

海伦:好。我买 45 元的邮票。

职员:您拿好。请将信投到门口的邮箱里。

海伦:好的。

示例 2

职员:下午好。我能为您做点什么吗?

玛丽:我想寄些照片到澳大利亚。

职员:您可以用挂号信寄。

玛丽:挂号信多长时间能寄到澳大利亚?

职员:大概一周吧。

2.

Mary: Hello . Could I buy some postcards here ?

Clerk: Sure, Miss . What kind of cards do you want ?

Mary: I 'd like those with the beautiful scenery of this city .

Clerk: Here you are . They make very good gifts .

Mary: Oh ,yes . They are so nice . I want to send one postcard to each of my friends .

Clerk: You may write them on the table over there .

3.

Mary: I 'd like to send some money to Malaysia . How long will it take ?

Clerk: About three days .

Mary: That 's not bad . Could I have an envelope, please?

Clerk: You could buy one at No . 5 counter .

Mary: Thank you .

Clerk: You 're welcome .

4.

1)

Clerk: Good morning, sir . Can I help you ?

Peter: Yes . Ah, can I send this letter by airmail ?

Clerk: Sure . But for an airmail, we should weigh it first . Do you mind putting it onto the scale ?

Peter: Of course not .

Clerk: I 'm afraid it 's a bit overweight . You have to pay ten yuan for the postage .

Peter: No problem . Here you are .

Clerk: Thank you . Here are your stamps .

Peter: Thanks .

2)

Clerk: Good afternoon , Miss . What can I do for you ?

Mary: I 'd like to post a letter to South Africa by airmail .

Clerk: Yes , Miss . Does it contain anything valuable ?

Mary: Well , yes . There are some photos inside .

Clerk: Then you 'd better send it by registered airmail . It 's much safer .

Mary: Good idea ! I 'll post them by registered airmail . Thanks .

Clerk: It 's my pleasure .

Part 听力实践

- A . 1) B 2) C 3) D 4) D 5) C
6) C 7) B 8) B 9) A 10) D

对话原文:

1) W: I hope you 'll excuse me for coming to class late . My car broke down .

M: I 'm sorry . I couldn 't hear you . There 's too much noise in this room .

Q: Where is this conversation most probably taking place ?

2) M: I don 't seem to be able to do this problem . I 'm following all the steps , but it doesn 't work . I can 't figure it out .

W: Let me show you . That one gave me a lot of trouble , too .

Q: What is the woman going to do ?

3) W: Wasn 't our appointment for 10:30 ?

M: Yes , it was . But I had to be 15 minutes late .

Q: What time did the man arrive ?

4) M: We are having a party Saturday night . Could you come ?

W: I wish I could , but I have to work at the library on weekends .

Q: Why can 't the woman go to the party ?

5) W: I left my raincoat in my room . Wait while I go back to get it .

M: Don 't bother . The weather report said it would clear up by noon .

Q: What does the man mean ?

6) M: How much are the tickets ?

W: They 're eight dollars each for the general public , but student tickets are half price .

Q: How much will the man pay for one general ticket and two student tickets ?

7) W: I 'll change my clothes after I finish typing this letter .

M: Okay , Jane . Then we 'll take my car and go out for a meal .

Q: What is Jane going to do first ?

8) M: This room is so crowded . I can hardly hear and I can 't see a thing .

W: I don 't understand why they didn 't have this show in a bigger theatre , do you ?

Q: Why is the man complaining ?

9) W: I used to be afraid of heights . Every time I was in a tall building or on a bridge, my knees would begin to shake .

M: I had the same problem until I took up mountain climbing .

Q: What do the man and woman say about heights ?

10) M: Dr . Taylor, I'd like to talk to you about working as your assistant next quarter .

W: Fine, please come in and sit down . Have you read the list of requirements for assistants in the English Department ?

Q: What is the probable relationship between the man and woman ?

B .

1 .

Question 1) : How did Susan write her letter ?

Answer: She made some marks on a piece of paper with color pencils .

Question 2) : What was the problem with Susan 's letter ?

Answer: That letter was too heavy . She had to put another stamp on it .

2 . 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) F 6) T 7) T 8) T

短文原文:

“ What are you doing , Susan ?” Mother asked her four-year-old daughter .

“ I 'm writing a letter to my cousin Helen, ” the little girl answered proudly .

“ But you don 't know how to write . ”

“ Well, mom, ” the little girl continued to make marks on a piece of paper with color pencils, “ Helen doesn 't know how to read . So it doesn 't make any difference . ”

Susan sealed the envelope after her mother helped her with the address and postcode . At the post office, the clerk weighed the letter and said: “ That letter is too heavy . You 'll have to put another stamp on it . ”

“ What 's the good of that ?” Susan asked . “ That will only make the letter heavier , won 't it ?”

3 .

I worked as a postman for a 1) short time . But I 'm afraid of 2) dogs . One day, I tried to deliver a 3) post-card to a big house . I got off my 4) bike and at once a large dog ran 5) towards the gate . It made a 6) lot of noise and in the 7) end I dropped the card in the 8) garden . The dog 9) picked it up at once and 10) carried it into the house . The dog was a better postman than I was .

4 . 1) B 2) D 3) C

短文原文:

An old friend from abroad, whom I was expecting to stay with me, telephoned from the airport to tell me that he had arrived . I was still at office at the time, but I had made arrangements for his arrival . After explaining where my new house was, I told him that I had left the key under the window . As I was likely to be home rather late, I advised him to go into the kitchen and help himself to food and drink .

Two hours later my friend telephoned me from the house . At the moment, he said, he was listening to some of my records after having just had a truly wonderful meal . Now, he said he was drinking a glass of orange juice and he hoped I would join him . When I asked him if he had reached my house without difficulty, he answered that he had not been able to find the key under the window, but fortunately the living room window just by the apple trees had been left open and he had climbed in . I listened to all this in astonishment . There is no apple tree in front of my living room, but there is one in front of my neighbor 's .

Questions :

- 1) How did his friend get into the house ?
- 2) What was his friend doing when he telephoned him from the house ?
- 3) Why was the speaker astonished ?